



## INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(51) International Patent Classification <sup>5</sup> :  C12N 15/12	A1	(11) International Publication Number: WO 91/05047 (43) International Publication Date: 18 April 1991 (18.04.91)
<p>(21) International Application Number: PCT/US90/05454</p> <p>(22) International Filing Date: 25 September 1990 (25.09.90)</p> <p>(30) Priority data: 412,745 26 September 1989 (26.09.89) US Not furnished 24 September 1990 (24.09.90) US</p> <p>(71) Applicants: THE JOHNS HOPKINS UNIVERSITY [US/US]; 720 Rutland Avenue, Baltimore, MD 21205 (US). THE BRIGHAM AND WOMEN'S HOSPITAL [US/US]; 75 Francis Street, Boston, MA 02115 (US). T CELL SCIENCES, INC. [US/US]; 38 Sidney Street, Cambridge, MA 02139 (US).</p> <p>(72) Inventors: FEARON, Douglas, T. ; 2 Blythewood Road, Baltimore, MD 21210 (US). KLINKSTEIN, Lloyd, B. ; 32 Saint Paul Street, Apt. 8, Brookline, MA 02146 (US). WONG, Winnie, W. ; 9 Parker Street, Newton, MA 02159 (US). CARSON, Gerald, R. ; HOH McAfee, Wellesley College, Wellesley, MA 02181 (US). CONCINO, Michael, F. ; 76 Athelstane Road, Newton, MA 02159 (US). IP, Stephen, H. ; 11 Singing Hill Circle, Sudbury, MA 01776 (US). MAKRIDES, Savvas, C. ; 37 Fletcher Road, Bedford, MA 01730 (US). MARSH, Henry, C., Jr. ; 218 High Street, Reading, MA 01867 (US).</p>	<p>(74) Agent: MISROCK, S., Leslie; Pennie &amp; Edmonds, 1155 Avenue of the Americas, New York, NY 10036 (US).</p> <p>(81) Designated States: AT (European patent), AU, BE (European patent), CA, CH (European patent), DE (European patent)*, DK (European patent), ES (European patent), FI, FR (European patent), GB (European patent), IT (European patent), JP, KR, LU (European patent), NL (European patent), SE (European patent), SU.</p> <p><b>Published</b> <i>With international search report. Before the expiration of the time limit for amending the claims and to be republished in the event of the receipt of amendments.</i></p>	
<p>(54) Title: THE HUMAN C3b/C4b RECEPTOR (CR1)</p> <p>(57) Abstract</p> <p>The present invention relates to the C3b/C4b receptor (CR1) gene, its encoded protein, and CR1 nucleic acid sequences and fragments thereof comprising 70 nucleotides and their encoded peptides or proteins comprising 24 amino acids. The invention further provides for the expression of the CR1 protein and fragments thereof. The genes and proteins of the invention have uses in diagnosis and therapy of disorders involving complement activity, and various embodiments of the present invention include the cloning, nucleotide sequence and deduced amino acid sequence of a full-length CR1 cDNA and fragments thereof. The expression of the CR1 protein and fragments thereof is also described as is the expression of a secreted CR1 molecule lacking a transmembrane region which is useful in reducing damage caused by inflammation and in reducing myocardial infarct size and preventing reperfusion injury.</p>		

### DESIGNATIONS OF "DE"

Until further notice, any designation of "DE" in any international application whose international filing date is prior to October 3, 1990, shall have effect in the territory of the Federal Republic of Germany with the exception of the territory of the former German Democratic Republic.

#### *FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY*

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AT	Austria	ES	Spain	MC	Monaco
AU	Australia	FI	Finland	MG	Madagascar
BB	Barbados	FR	France	ML	Mali
BE	Belgium	GA	Gabon	MR	Mauritania
BF	Burkina Fasso	GB	United Kingdom	MW	Malawi
BG	Bulgaria	GR	Greece	NL	Netherlands
BJ	Benin	HU	Hungary	NO	Norway
BR	Brazil	IT	Italy	PL	Poland
CA	Canada	JP	Japan	RO	Romania
CF	Central African Republic	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	SD	Sudan
CG	Congo	KR	Republic of Korea	SE	Sweden
CH	Switzerland	LI	Liechtenstein	SN	Senegal
CM	Cameroon	LK	Sri Lanka	SU	Soviet Union
DE	Germany	LU	Luxembourg	TD	Chad
DK	Denmark			TG	Togo
				US	United States of America

-1-

THE HUMAN C3b/C4b RECEPTOR (CR1)1. INTRODUCTION

5 The present invention relates to the C3b/C4b receptor (CR1) gene and its encoded protein. The invention also relates to CR1 nucleic acid sequences and fragments thereof comprising 70 nucleotides, and their encoded peptides or proteins comprising 24 amino acids. The invention also provides for the expression of the CR1 protein and fragments thereof. The CR1 nucleic acids and  
10 proteins have use in the diagnosis or therapy of disorders involving complement activity, and various inflammatory and immune disorders.

15 2. BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION2.1. THE COMPLEMENT SYSTEM

The complement system is a group of proteins that constitutes about 10 percent of the globulins in the normal serum of humans (Hood, L.E., et al., 1984; Immunology, 2d  
20 Ed., The Benjamin/Cummings Publishing Co., Menlo Park, California, p. 339). Complement (C) plays an important role in the mediation of immune and allergic reactions (Rapp, H.J. and Borsos, T, 1970, Molecular Basis of Complement  
25 Action, Appleton-Century-Crofts (Meredith), New York). The activation of complement components leads to the generation of a group of factors, including chemotactic peptides that mediate the inflammation associated with complement-dependent diseases. The sequential activation of the  
30 complement cascade may occur via the classical pathway involving antigen-antibody complexes, or by an alternative pathway which involves the recognition of certain cell wall polysaccharides. The activities mediated by activated complement proteins include lysis of target cells,  
35 chemotaxis, opsonization, stimulation of vascular and other

smooth muscle cells, and functional aberrations such as degranulation of mast cells, increased permeability of small blood vessels, directed migration of leukocytes, and activation of B lymphocytes and macrophages (Eisen, H.N., 1974, Immunology, Harper & Row Publishers, Inc. Hagerstown, Maryland, p. 512).

During proteolytic cascade steps, biologically active peptide fragments, the anaphylatoxins C3a, C4a, and C5a (See WHO Scientific Group, 1977, WHO Tech. Rep. Ser. 606:5 and references cited therein), are released from the third (C3), fourth (C4), and fifth (C5) native complement components (Hugli, T.E., 1981, CRC Crit. Rev. Immunol. 1:321; Bult, H. and Herman, A.G., 1983, Agents Actions 13:405).

15

## 2.2. THE C3b/C4b COMPLEMENT RECEPTOR (CR1)

The human C3b/C4b receptor, termed CR1, is present on erythrocytes, monocytes/macrophages, granulocytes, B cells, some T cells, splenic follicular dendritic cells, and glomerular podocytes (Fearon, D.T., 1980, J. Exp. Med. 152:20, Wilson, J.G., et al., 1983, J. Immunol. 131:684; Reynes, M., et al., 1985, J. Immunol. 135:2687; Gelfand, M.C., et al., 1976, N. Engl. J. Med. 295:10; Kazatchkine, M.D., et al., 1982, Clin. Immunol. Immunopathol. 27:170). CR1 specifically binds C3b, C4b, and iC3b. A soluble form of the receptor has been found in plasma that has ligand binding activity and the same molecular weight as membrane-associated CR1 (Yoon, S.H. and Fearon, D.T., 1985, J. Immunol. 134:3332). CR1 binds C3b and C4b that have covalently attached to immune complexes and other complement activators, and the consequences of these interactions depend upon the cell type bearing the receptor (Fearon, D.T. and Wong, W.W., 1983, Ann. Rev. Immunol. 1:243). Erythrocyte CR1 binds immune complexes for transport to the liver (Cornacoff, J.B., et al., 1983, J.



Clin. Invest. 71:236; Medof, M.E., et al., 1982, J. Exp. Med. 156:1739) CR1 on neutrophils and monocytes internalizes bound complexes, either by adsorptive endocytosis through coated pits (Fearon, D.T., et al., 1981, J. Exp. Med. 153:1615; Abrahamson, D.R. and Fearon, D.T., 1983, Lab. Invest. 48:162) or by phagocytosis after activation of the receptor by phorbol esters, chemotactic peptides, or proteins that are present in the extracellular matrix, such as fibronectin and laminin (Newman, S.L., et al., 1980, J. Immunol. 125:2236; Wright, S.D. and Silverstein, S.C., 1982, J. Exp. Med. 156:1149; Wright, S.D., et al., 1983, J. Exp. Med. 158:1338). Phosphorylation of CR1 may have a role in the acquisition of phagocytic activity (Changelian, P.S. and Fearon, D.T., 1986, J. Exp. Med. 163:101). The function of CR1 on B lymphocytes is less defined, although treatment of these cells with antibody to CR1 enhanced their response to suboptimal doses of pokeweed mitogen (Daha, M.R., et al., 1983, Immunobiol. 164:227 (Abstr.)). CR1 on follicular dendritic cells may subserve an antigen presentation role (Klaus, G.G.B., et al., 1980, Immunol. Rev. 53:3).

CR1 can also inhibit the classical and alternative pathway C3/C5 convertases and act as a cofactor for the cleavage of C3b and C4b by factor I, indicating that CR1 also has complement regulatory functions in addition to serving as a receptor (Fearon, D.T., 1979, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 76:5867; Iida, K. and Nussenzweig, V., 1981, J. Exp. Med. 153:1138). In the alternative pathway of complement activation, the bimolecular complex C3b,Bb is a C3 activating enzyme (convertase). CR1 (and factor H, at higher concentrations) can bind to C3b and can also promote the dissociation of C3b,Bb. Furthermore, formation of C3b,CR1 (and C3b,H) renders C3b susceptible to irreversible proteolytic inactivation by factor I, resulting in the formation of inactivated C3b (iC3b). In the classical pathway of complement activation, the complex C4b,2a is the

C3 convertase. CR1 (and C4 binding protein, C4bp, at higher concentrations) can bind to C4b, and can also promote the dissociation of C4b,2a. The binding renders C4b susceptible to irreversible proteolytic inactivation by factor I through cleavage to C4c and C4d (inactivated complement proteins.)

5 CR1 is a glycoprotein composed of a single polypeptide chain. Four allotypic forms of CR1 have been found, differing by increments of ~40,000-50,000 daltons molecular weight. The two most common forms, the F and S  
10 allotypes, also termed the A and B allotypes, have molecular weights of 250,000 and 290,000 daltons (Dykman, T.R., et al., 1983, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 80:1698; Wong, W.W., et al., 1983, J. Clin. Invest. 72:685), respectively, and two rarer forms have molecular weights of 210,000 and  
15 >290,000 daltons (Dykman, T.R., et al., 1984, J. Exp. Med. 159:691; Dykman, T.R., et al., 1985, J. Immunol. 134:1787). These differences apparently represent variations in the polypeptide chain of CR1, rather than glycosylation state, because they were not abolished by treatment of purified  
20 receptor protein with endoglycosidase F (Wong, W.W., et al., 1983, J. Clin. Invest. 72:685), and they were observed when receptor allotypes were biosynthesized in the presence of tunicamycin (Lublin, D.M., et al., 1986, J. Biol. Chem. 261:5736). All four CR1 allotypes have C3b-binding activity  
25 (Dykman, T.R., et al., 1983, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 80:1698; Wong, W.W., et al., 1983, J. Clin. Invest. 72:685; Dykman, T.R., et al., 1984, J. Exp. Med. 159:691; Dykman T.R., et al., 1985, J. Immunol. 134:1787).

Two nonoverlapping restriction fragments of a CR1  
30 cDNA were shown to crosshybridize under conditions of high stringency (Wong, W.W., et al., 1985, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 82:7711). Both cDNA probes also hybridized to multiple restriction fragments of genomic DNA, most of which were common to both probes (id.). The existence of  
35 repetitive coding sequences within CR1 was confirmed by

sequence comparisons (Klickstein, L.B., et al., 1985, Complement 2:44 (Abstr.)). In addition, the CR1 gene has been shown to have repetitive intervening sequences by the demonstration of crosshybridization of a genomic probe lacking coding sequences to several genomic restriction fragments (Wong, W.W., et al., 1986, J. Exp. Med. 164:1531). Further, DNA from an individual having the larger S allotype had an additional restriction fragment hybridizing to this genomic probe when compared with DNA from an individual having the F allotype, suggesting that duplication of genomic sequences occurred in association with the higher molecular weight CR1 allele (*id.*).

CR1 has been shown to have homology to complement receptor type 2 (CR2) (Weis, J.J., et al., 1986, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 83:5639-5643).

### 2.3. ABNORMALITIES OF CR1 IN HUMAN DISEASE

Diminished expression of CR1 on erythrocytes of patients with systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) has been reported by investigators from several geographic regions, including Japan (Miyakawa et al., 1981, Lancet 2:493-497; Minota et al., 1984, Arthr. Rheum. 27:1329-1335), the United States (Iida et al., 1982, J. Exp. Med. 155:1427-1438; Wilson et al., 1982, N. Engl. J. Med. 307:981-986) and Europe (Walport et al., 1985, Clin. Exp. Immunol. 59:547; Jouvin et al., 1986, Complement 3:88-96; Holme et al., 1986, Clin. Exp. Immunol. 63:41-48). Taken as a group, patients have an average number of receptors per cell that is 50-60% that of normal populations. An early report noted that CR1 number on erythrocytes varied inversely with disease activity, with lowest numbers occurring during periods of most severe manifestations of SLE, and higher numbers being observed during periods of remission in the same patient (Iida et al., 1982, J. Exp. Med. 155:1427-1438). CR1 number has also been found to correlate inversely with serum levels

- of immune complexes, with serum levels of C3d, and with the amounts of erythrocyte-bound C3dg, perhaps reflecting uptake of complement-activating immune complexes and deposition on the erythrocyte as an "innocent bystander" (Ross et al., 1985, J. Immunol. 135:2005-2014; Holme et al., 1986, Clin. Exp. Immunol. 63:41-48; Walport et al., 1985, Clin. Exp. Immunol. 59:547). A patient with SLE lacking CR1 on erythrocytes was found to have an auto-antibody to CR1 (Wilson et al., 1985, J. Clin. Invest. 76:182-190).
- Decreased titers of the anti-CR1 antibody coincided with improvement of the patient's clinical condition and with partial reversal of the receptor abnormality. Anti-CR1 antibody has been detected in two other SLE patients (Cook et al., 1986, Clin. Immunol. Immunopathol. 38:135-138).
- Recently, acquired loss of erythrocyte CR1 in the setting of active SLE and hemolytic anemia was demonstrated by observing the rapid loss of the receptor from transfused erythrocytes (Walport et al., 1987, Clin. Exp. Immunol. 69:501-507).
- The relative loss of CR1 from erythrocytes has also been observed in patients with Human Immunodeficiency Virus (HIV) infections (Tausk, F.A., et al., 1986, J. Clin. Invest. 78:977-982) and with lepromatous leprosy (Tausk, F.A., et al., 1985, J. Invest. Dermat. 85:58s-61s).
- Abnormalities of complement receptor expression in SLE are not limited to erythrocyte CR1. Relative deficiencies of total cellular CR1 of neutrophils and plasma membrane CR1 of B lymphocytes of the SLE patients have been shown to occur (Wilson et al., 1986, Arthr. Rheum. 29:739-747).
- In patients with Type IV SLE nephritis, all detectable CR1 antigen is lost from podocytes, whereas in less severe forms of SLE nephritis and in non-SLE types of proliferative nephritis, including membranoproliferative glomerulonephritis Types I and II, CR1 expression on

glomerular podocytes does not differ from normal  
(Kazatchkine et al., 1982, J. Clin. Invest. 69:900-912;  
Emancipator et al., 1983, Clin. Immunol. Immunopathol. 27:  
170-175). However, patients having Type IV SLE nephritis do  
not have fewer numbers of erythrocyte CR1 than do SLE  
patients having other types of renal lupus or no nephritis  
(Jouvin et al., 1986, Complement 3:88-96).

In vivo complement activation up-regulates CR1  
expression at the plasma membrane of neutrophils (Lee, J.,  
et al., 1984, Clin. Exp. Immunol. 56:205-214; Moore, F.D.,  
Jr., et al., 1986, N. Engl. J. Med. 314:948-953).

Complement activation has also been associated  
with disease states involving inflammation. The intestinal  
inflammation of Crohn's disease is characterized by the  
lymphoid infiltration of mononuclear and polymorphonuclear  
leukocytes. It was found recently (Ahrenstedt et al., 1990,  
New Engl. J. Med. 322:1345-9) that the complement C4  
concentration in the jejunal fluid of Crohn's disease  
patients increased compared to normal controls. Other  
disease states implicating the complement system in  
inflammation include thermal injury (burns, frostbite)  
(Gelfand et al., 1982, J. Clin. Invest. 70:1170; Demling et  
al., 1989, Surgery 106:52-9), hemodialysis (Deppisch et al.,  
1990, Kidney Inst. 37:696-706; Kojima et al., 1989, Nippon  
Jenzo Gakkai Shi 31:91-7), and post pump syndrome in  
cardiopulmonary bypass (Chenoweth et al., 1981, Complement  
Inflamm. 3:152-165; Chenoweth et al., 1986, Complement  
3:152-165; Salama et al., 1988, N. Engl. J. Med. 318:408-  
14). Both complement and leukocytes are reported to be  
implicated in the pathogenesis of adult respiratory distress  
syndrome (Zilow et al., 1990, Clin. Exp. Immunol. 79:151-57;  
Langlois et al., 1989, Heart Lung 18:71-84). Activation of  
the complement system is suggested to be involved in the  
development of fatal complication in sepsis (Hack et al.,  
1989, Am. J. Med. 86:20-26) and causes tissue injury in

animal models of autoimmune diseases such as immune-complex-induced vasculitis (Cochrane, 1984, Springer Seminar Immunopathol. 7:263), glomerulonephritis (Couser et al., 1985, Kidney Inst. 29:879), hemolytic anemia (Schreiber & Frank, 1972, J. Clin. Invest. 51:575), myasthenis gravis (Lennon et al., 1978, J. Exp. Med. 147:973; Biesecker & Gomez, 1989, J. Immunol. 142:2654), type II collagen-induced arthritis (Watson & Townes, 1985, J. Exp. Med. 162:1878), and experimental allergic neuritis (Feasby et al., 1987, Brain Res. 419:97). The complement system is also involved in hyperacute allograft and hyperacute xenograft rejection (Knechtle et al., 1985, J. Heart Transplant 4(5):541; Guttman, 1974, Transplantation 17:383; Adachi et al., 1987, Trans. Proc. 19(1):1145). Complement activation during immunotherapy with recombinant IL-2 appears to cause the severe toxicity and side effects observed from IL-2 treatment (Thijs et al., 1990, J. Immunol. 144:2419).

Complement may also play a role in diseases involving immune complexes. Immune complexes are found in many pathological states including but not limited to autoimmune diseases such as rheumatoid arthritis or SLE, hematologic malignancies such as AIDS (Tayler et al., 1983, Arthritis Rheum. 26:736-44; Inada et al., 1986, AIDS Research 2:235-247) and disorders involving autoantibodies and/or complement activation (Ross et al., 1985, J. Immunol. 135:2005-14). Inada et al. reported that erythrocyte CR1 has a functional role in the removal of circulating immune complexes in autoimmune patients and may thereby inhibit the disposition of immune complexes within body tissue (Inada et al., 1989, Ann. Rheum. Dis 4:287). A decrease in CR1 activity has been associated with clinical disease state in ARC and AIDS patients (Inada et al., 1986, AIDS Res. 2:235).

### 3. SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

The present invention relates to the C3b/C4b receptor (CR1) gene and its encoded protein. The invention also relates to CR1 nucleic acid sequences and fragments thereof comprising 70 nucleotides and their encoded peptides or proteins comprising 24 amino acids. The invention further provides for the expression of the CR1 protein and fragments thereof. The genes and proteins of the invention have uses in diagnosis and therapy of disorders involving complement activity, and various immune system or inflammatory disorders.

In specific embodiments of the present invention detailed in the examples sections infra, the cloning, nucleotide sequence, and deduced amino acid sequence of a full-length CR1 cDNA and fragments thereof are described. The expression of the CR1 protein and fragments thereof is also described. Expression of the CR1 protein and its fragments which contain binding sites for C3b and/or C4b, and which exhibit factor I cofactor activity, is obtained.

Also described in the examples infra are the production and purification of soluble CR1 molecules, which molecules are shown to be therapeutically useful for the treatment of inflammatory reactions and in the reduction of myocardial infarct size and prevention of reperfusion injury.

#### 3.1. DEFINITIONS

	Ad2 MLP	=	adenovirus 2 major late promoter
	C	=	complement
30	C3(ma)	=	methylanine-treated C3
	C4bp	=	C4 binding protein
	CMV	=	cytomegalovirus
	CR1	=	complement receptor type 1, the C3b/C4b receptor
35	CR2	=	complement receptor, type 2

DCFDA = dichlorofluorescein diacetate  
HPLC = high performance liquid chromatography  
iC3b = inactivated C3b  
LHR = long homologous repeat  
mAb = monoclonal antibody  
PAGE = polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis  
RPAR = reverse passive Arthus reaction  
SCR = short consensus repeat  
sCR1 = soluble CR1 molecule

5

10

#### 4. DESCRIPTION OF THE FIGURES

Figure 1. Nucleotide and amino acid sequence of the entire CR1 coding region. The sequence begins with the first nucleotide following the octamer EcoRI linker in clone AT109.1. Nucleotide number 1531 of this sequence is the first nucleotide 5' of nucleotide number 1 of the sequence depicted in Figure 3. The strand corresponding to the mRNA is shown, with the deduced amino acid sequence presented below. The putative signal sequence encoded by nucleotide numbers 28-147 is bracketed.

15

20

Figure 2. Restriction map of 5.5 kb of human CR1 cDNA. The black bar indicates the cDNA, restriction sites are H, HindIII; B, BamHI; R, EcoRI; P, PstI; A, ApaI; S, SacI; G, BglII; K, KpnI. The cDNA clones from which the sequence was derived are shown below the map. The arrows indicate the direction and extent of sequence analysis by the dideoxynucleotide chain termination method. cDNA clones were oriented on the basis of restriction maps and overlapping sequence identity.

25

Figure 3. Nucleotide sequence of 5.5 kb of human CR1 cDNA. The strand corresponding to the mRNA is shown and base number 1 (corresponding to base number 1532 of Fig. 1) is the first base after the EcoRI linker in the most 5' clone. The stop codon is underlined. The 110-bp sequence

30

35



in the box was found between nucleotides 147 and 148 (arrow) and is believed to represent a portion of an intervening sequence.

5           Figure 4. Dot matrix analysis of the nucleotide  
sequence of 5.5 kb of human CR1 cDNA. A dot was plotted if  
there was at least a 40 bp of 90 bp match. The dark line  
bisecting the square diagonally indicates the identity of  
the sequence with itself. The two additional parallel dark  
lines 1.35 and 2.7 kb from the line of identity represent  
10 two tandem, direct long homologous repeats (LHRs) of 1.35 kb  
each. The six lighter, dashed lines between two LHRs  
correspond to short consensus repeats of ~0.2 kb. The short  
consensus repeats (SCRs) extend 0.4 kb beyond the long  
homologous repeats.

15           Figure 5. Deduced amino acid sequence of human  
CR1. Each residue is shown in the one letter code  
(Lehninger, A.L., 1975, Biochemistry, 2d Ed., Worth  
Publishers, Inc., New York, p. 72). The residues in the  
long homologous repeats have been aligned to illustrate  
their homology. All the residues in LHR-B are shown, and a  
20 residue is given for LHR-C and LHR-D only where it is  
different from that in LHR-B. A hydropathy profile is  
aligned under the COOH-terminus of the protein to illustrate  
the presumptive transmembrane region. A stretch of four  
positively charged residues immediately after the  
25 hydrophobic sequence is overlined. The six amino acid  
sequence with 67% homology to the site of protein kinase C  
phosphorylation in the epidermal growth factor receptor is  
underlined. A schematic diagram of the CR1 protein is shown  
above the sequence. (TM) transmembrane region, (Cyt)  
30 cytoplasmic region, (3'UT) 3' untranslated sequence.

          Figure 6. (A) Alignment of the SCRs of CR1. The  
repeats are numbered 1-23 from NH<sub>2</sub>-terminal to COOH-terminal.  
Spaces have been introduced to maximize the alignment. A

residue is deemed conserved if it, or a conservative substitution, is present in at least half of the SCRs. The horizontal arrow indicates an SCR that was also sequenced from CR1 genomic clone 2.38 and is encoded by a single exon.

5 (B) Restriction map, sequencing strategy, and partial sequence of genomic clone  $\lambda$ 2.38. The restriction sites are: (B) BamHI, (S) SacI, (E) EcoRV, (K) KpnI, (P) PstI. The horizontal arrow indicates direction and extent of sequencing and the vertical arrows indicate the exon-intron boundaries.

10 Figure 7. Alignment of the consensus sequence of the SCRs of proteins known to have this structure. Spaces were introduced to maximize the alignment. A residue is deemed conserved as in Figure 5, except for those proteins having only one or two SCRs, in which a residue is conserved if it is present in at least half of the other proteins. The dashes correspond to nonconserved positions. The underlined portions of CR2 and C2b indicate that no sequence information has been published in this region for these proteins. The boxes indicate the invariant half-cystines.

20 The number to the right of the sequence represents the number of SCRs used to generate the consensus sequence. The protein abbreviations and references for the sequence data used to determine the consensus sequences are: (CR1)

25 complement receptor type 1, (H) factor H (Kristensen, T., et al., 1986, J. Immunol. 136:3407), (C4bp) C4 binding protein (Chung, L.P., et al., 1985, Biochem. J. 230:133), (CR2) complement receptor type 2 (Weis, J.J., et al., 1986, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 83:5639), (Ba) proteolytic fragment of factor B (Morley, B.J. and Campbell, R.D., 1984, EMBO J. 3:153), (C2b) proteolytic fragment of C2 (Gagnon, J., 1984, Philos. Trans. R. Soc. Lond. B Biol. Sci. 306:301), (C1r) r subunit of C1 (Leytus, S.P., et al., 1986, Biochemistry 25:4855), (XIIIb) b subunit of factor XIII (Ichinose, A., et

30 al., 1986, Biochemistry 25:4633), ( $\beta$ 2GP1)  $\beta$ 2 glycoprotein I

-13-

(Lozier, J., et al., 1984, Proc. Natl., Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 81:3640), (Hap) haptoglobin (Kurosky, A., et al., 1980, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 77:3388), (IL-2-R) the interleukin-2 receptor (Leonard, W.J., et al., 1985, Science 230:633). Asterisk indicates that incomplete sequence is available.

Figure 8. Schematic diagram of the proposed structure of human CR1. The COOH-terminal cytoplasmic region is on the right side of the lipid bilayer. 30 SCRs are arrayed linearly on the extracellular side of the plasma membrane. The brackets indicate the LHRs. The inset is an enlargement of a single SCR to illustrate the triple loop structure.

Figure 9. Restriction map of the insert of the plasmid, pBSABCD, encoding human CR1. Indicated within the box delineating the region containing the coding sequence are the nine fragments of eight cDNA clones that were ligated to form the CR1 construct. The brackets designate the positions of LHR-A, -B, -C, and -D, respectively. The lines below the box represent the positions of the newly isolated 5' cDNA clones. The restriction sites are: A, ApaI; B, BamHI; G, BglII; H, HindIII; K, KpnI; M, BspMII; P, PstI; R, EcoRI; and S, SacI.

Figure 10. The deduced amino acid sequence of the 5' cDNA clones encoding the seven SCRs of LHR-A, and alignment of this sequence with the corresponding SCRs of LHR-B, -C, and -D. The four cysteines that are conserved in each SCR are underlined. A residue is shown for LHR-B, -C and -D only where it is different from that in LHR-A.

Figure 11. Restriction maps of the expression plasmids, piABCD and pMTABCD. Pm<sub>MT</sub> and p<sub>CMV</sub> represent the murine metallothionein and cytomegalovirus immediate early promoters, respectively.

35

Figure 12. Analysis by phase contrast (panels a and c) and immunofluorescent (panels b and d) microscopy of COS cells transfected with piABCD (panels a and b) and CDM8 vector alone (panels c and d), respectively, and indirectly stained with YZ1 monoclonal anti-CR1 antibody and fluorescein-labelled goat anti-mouse F(ab')<sub>2</sub>.

Figure 13. Analysis of C3b- and C4b-binding by COS cells expressing recombinant CR1. COS cells transfected with piABCD (panels a and c) or with the CDM8 vector alone (panels b and d) were incubated with EAC4b(lim), 3b (panels a and b) or with EAC4b (panels c and d) and examined for formation of rosettes by phase contrast microscopy.

Figure 14. Analysis of recombinant CR1 expressed by transfected COS cells by SDS-PAGE. COS cells transfected with the CDM8 vector alone (lanes 1 and 4) and with piABCD (lanes 2 and 5), respectively, and erythrocytes from an individual having the F and S allotypes of CR1 (lanes 3 and 6) were surface labelled with <sup>125</sup>I. Detergent lysates of the cells were sequentially immunoadsorbed with Sepharose-UPC10 (lanes 1-3) and Sepharose-YZ1 (lanes 4-6) and the eluates analyzed by SDS-PAGE under non-reducing conditions and autoradiography.

Figure 15. Cleavage of <sup>125</sup>I-C3(ma) by factor I in the presence of immunoimmobilized recombinant CR1. Replicate samples of <sup>125</sup>I-C3(ma) were treated with factor I in the presence of factor H (lane 1), Sepharose-UPC10 preincubated with the lysate of COS cells transfected with the CDM8 vector alone (lane 2), Sepharose-UPC10 preincubated with the lysate of piABCD-transfected COS cells (lane 3), Sepharose-YZ1 preincubated with the lysate of CDM8-transfected COS cells (lane 4), and 6 μl (lane 5), 12 μl (lane 6) and 25 μl (lane 7) of Sepharose-YZ1 that had been preincubated with the lysate of piABCD-transfected COS cells. Samples of <sup>125</sup>I-labelled C3(ma) were also treated in the absence of factor I with 25 μl of Sepharose-YZ1 that had

been preincubated with the lysate of piABCD-transfected COS cells (lane 8). After reduction, the  $^{125}\text{I}$ -C3(ma) was analyzed by SDS-PAGE and autoradiography.

Figure 16. The cDNA constructs encoding the CR1 deletion mutants. The positions of the cDNA segments encoding the four LHRs are indicated by the brackets above the full length piABCD construct on which are shown the restriction sites used for preparation of the deletion mutants. The cDNA restriction fragments remaining in each of the mutants are indicated by the solid lines. The restriction sites are: A, ApaI; B, BsmI; E, BstEII; and P, PstI.

Figure 17. Comparison of recombinant deletion mutants of CR1 with the wild type F and S allotypes of CR1. Detergent lysates of  $^{125}\text{I}$ -surface labelled erythrocytes (lanes 1 and 7) and COS cells transfected with CDM8 vector alone (lanes 2 and 8), piABCD (lanes 3 and 9), piBCD (lanes 4 and 10), piCD (lanes 5 and 11) and piD (lanes 6 and 12), respectively, were immunoprecipitated with Sepharose-UPC10 anti-levan antibody (lanes 1-6), Sepharose-YZ-1 anti-CR1 monoclonal antibody (lanes 7-11) and rabbit anti-CR1 antibody and Sepharose-protein A (lane 12), respectively. The eluates were subjected to SDS-PAGE under reducing conditions and autoradiography.

Figure 18. Cleavage of  $^{125}\text{I}$ -C3(ma) by factor I in the presence of COS cells expressing full length and deletion mutants of CR1. Replicate samples of  $^{125}\text{I}$ -C3(ma) were incubated with COS cells transfected with the CDM8 vector alone (lanes 1 and 7), piABCD (lanes 2 and 8), piAD (lanes 3 and 9), piBD (lanes 4 and 10), piCD (lanes 5 and 11), and piD (lanes 6 and 12), respectively, in the absence (lanes 1-6) or presence (lanes 7-12) of factor I. Samples of  $^{125}\text{I}$ -C3(ma) also were incubated with factor H and factor

I (lane 13) and with factor I alone (lane 14), respectively. After reduction, the  $^{125}\text{I}$ -C3(ma) was analyzed by SDS-PAGE and autoradiography.

5 Figure 19. Schematic model depicting the types of SCRs comprising each LHR of CR1, and the predicted sites determining the specificities of the receptor for C3b and C4b. The secondary binding specificities of these are indicated by the parentheses.

10 Figure 20. A schematic diagram illustrating the DNA regions remaining in the soluble CR1 DNA constructs. The regions of the full length CR1 cDNA are indicated by the boxes along the top of the figure.

Figure 21. A schematic diagram illustrating the major elements in the pTCS series of expression vectors.

15 Figure 22. A diagram of the expression vector pTCSgpt. The polyadenylation site is from the murine Ig kappa sequences (NBRF Nucleic database accession #Kcms, bp 1306-1714); the Ad2 MLP and tripartite regions are from the Ad2 sequence (NBRF Nucleic database accession #Gdad2, bp 5791-6069); the SV40 early promoter is from the SV40 genome (NBRF Nucleic Database accession #GSV40W). The gpt gene, ampicillin gene and bacterial origin of replication are from the vector pSV2gpt (ATCC Accession No. 37145).

20 Figure 23. 4-20% SDS-PAGE of antibody affinity purified sCR1. Non-reducing (lanes 1, 2, 3) and reducing (lanes 4, 5, 6) conditions. Lanes 1, 3: molecular weight markers; lanes 3, 5: cell culture supernatant starting material; lanes 4, 6: sCR1 purified by antibody affinity chromatography.

30 Figure 24. Cation exchange HPLC elution profile. Eluted protein was monitored by absorbance at 280 nm (y-axis). The absorbance of both the flow-through (0-100 minutes) and the eluted sCR1 (150-165 minutes) were both offscale. The x-axis represents the elution time in minutes.

35

Figure 25. 4-20% gradient SDS-PAGE of cation and anion exchange HPLC purified sCR1. SDS-polyacryamide gels were run under non-reducing conditions. Lane 1, an aliquot of bioreactor supernatant; lane 2, an aliquot of bioreactor supernatant dialyzed against cation HPLC starting buffer; lane 3, an aliquot of the eluted sCR1 peak from a cation exchange HPLC column; lane 4, an aliquot of the sCR1 peak from the cation exchange HPLC column dialyzed into starting buffer for anion HPLC; lanes 5 and 6, aliquots of two different fractions of eluted sCR1 from anion HPLC.

Figure 26. C5a induction of an oxygen burst in human neutrophils. Following a C5a induced oxygen burst, DCFDA became oxidized and brightly fluoresced. Fluorescent intensity, as determined by flow cytometry, is measured on the x-axis and number of cells on the y-axis. Panel a, profile and gate for the cells; panel b, 0 minutes after C5a addition; panel c, 1 minute; panel d, 2 minutes; panel e, 3 minutes; panel f, 4 minutes; panel g, 20 minutes. This DCFDA assay gives a sensitive indication of C5a.

Figure 27. Activation of human complement in the presence of sCR1 shows reduced C5a activity in the DCFDA assay. Panel a, unstimulated cells; panel b, control without sCR1 showing a high degree of fluorescence; panel c, DCFDA assay in the presence of sCR1 showing a reduction of 75% in fluorescent intensity. y-axis is number of cells and x-axis is fluorescent intensity.

Figure 28. Inhibition of classical pathway C5a and C3a production in human serum by sCR1. Similar profiles were observed for either antibody affinity purified or HPLC purified sCR1.

Figure 29. Inhibition of complement-mediated hemolysis by recombinant sCR1. Similar profiles were observed for antibody affinity purified or HPLC purified sCR1.

Figure 30. Gross morphology of RPAR in sCR1-treated (left) and untreated (right) rats. (a) Both rats received an intravenous injection of ovalbumin, followed by an intradermal injection of a mixture of either sCR1 (left rat) or PBS (right rat) with anti-ovalbumin, neat (left site); anti-ovalbumin, 1/2 dilution (middle site) or rabbit IgG (right site). The injections were performed in duplicate; top and bottom rows gave identical results. The rat which received sCR1 had barely visible changes, while the untreated rat developed full symptoms of RPAR. (b) The dermal surface of the skin biopsies from (a). The biopsy from the untreated rat (right) developed clearly visible lesion, while the biopsy from the sCR1-treated rat (left) showed normal morphology.

Figure 31. Light microscopy of skin biopsies from sCR1-treated (a) and untreated (b) rats. (a) Perivascular accumulation of polymorphonuclear and mononuclear cells was observed, however, no extensive infiltration of neutrophils or extravasation of erythrocytes was seen. (b) Extensive infiltration of polymorphonuclear cells and extravasation of erythrocytes was identified.

Figure 32. The clearance of injected sCR1 from the blood of rats and monkeys showing biphasic,  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ , clearance phases.

Figure 33. Autoradiographs of the Southern blots in which the CR1 cDNA and intron probes were hybridized to the EcoRV digests of the DNA from individuals who expressed the F or the F' allotypes. The positions of the Hind III fragments of  $\lambda$ DNA are designated in kilobases on the left. The position of the F'-specific fragment is designated by a single arrow.

Figure 34. EcoRV restriction map of the F allele of CR1. The white boxes represent the positions of the exons and the stippled boxes represent the sites of



hybridizations of the intron probes. The brackets over the LHR-B and -C indicate two possible regions of deletion. V represents an EcoRV site.

5 Figure 35. The cDNA inserts for the different forms of recombinant rCR1. The restriction sites shown are: A, ApaI I; B, BamH I; C, Sac I; H, Hind III; L, Bgl I; P, Pst I; R, EcoR I; and S, Sma I. The diagram at the top represents the CR1 protein, and the SCR with identical sequences are filled in by the same patterns.

10 Figure 36. Coomassie Blue-stained SDS-PAGE under nonreducing conditions of recombinant sCR1 purified by absorption on YZ-1-Sepharose. Each lane contains 10  $\mu$ g of recombinant sCR1 purified from the culture supernatants of COS cells that have been transfected with pasecABBCD (lane 1), pasecABCD (lane 2), or pasecACD (lane 3). The position of the  $M_r$  markers are indicated on the right in kD.

15 Figure 37. Cofactor activity of recombinant sCR1. Cleavage of the  $\alpha'$  chain of C3b was measured in the presence of increasing amounts of recombinant sCR1 derived from COS cells transfected with pasecABBCD, pasecABCD, or pasecACD.

20 Figure 38. Inhibition of  $^{125}$ I-C3b dimer uptake on erythrocytes by recombinant sCR1. Erythrocyte-bound ligand was measured in the presence of increasing concentrations of C3b dimer, C3b monomer, and recombinant sCR1 derived from COS cells transfected with pasecABBCD, pasecABCD, or pasecACD.

25 Figure 39. Inhibition of the alternative (A) and classical (B) C3 convertases by recombinant sCR1 purified from COS cells transfected with the different plasmids encoding the CR1 variants.

30 Figure 40. Inhibition of the alternative (A) and classical (B) C5 convertases by recombinant sCR1 purified from COS cells transfected with the different plasmids encoding the CR1 variants.

## 5. DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION

The present invention is directed to the C3b/C4b receptor (CR1) gene and its encoded protein. The invention is also directed to CR1 nucleic acid sequences and fragments thereof comprising 70 nucleotides and their encoded peptides or proteins comprising 24 amino acids. The invention further provides for the expression of the CR1 protein and fragments thereof. Such CR1 sequences and proteins have value in diagnosis and therapy of inflammatory or immune system disorders, and disorders involving complement activity.

In a specific embodiment, the invention relates to soluble CR1 molecules and the expression, purification, and uses thereof. As used herein, the term "soluble CR1 molecules" shall mean portions of the CR1 protein which, in contrast to the native CR1 proteins, are not expressed on the cell surface as membrane proteins. In particular, CR1 molecules which substantially lack a transmembrane region are soluble CR1 molecules. In a preferred embodiment, the soluble CR1 molecules are secreted by a cell in which they are expressed.

In specific embodiments of the present invention detailed in the examples sections infra, the cloning and complete nucleotide and deduced amino acid sequence of the full-length CR1 cDNA, and of fragments thereof, and the expression of the encoded CR1 products, are described. The expression of CR1 and fragments thereof, with binding sites for C3b and/or C4b, and which inhibit factor I cofactor activity, is also described. The invention is further illustrated by the production and purification of soluble, truncated CR1 molecules. In specific examples, such molecules are demonstrated to be therapeutically useful in reducing inflammation, and in reducing myocardial infarct size and preventing reperfusion injury.

### 5.1. ISOLATION OF THE CR1 GENE

The complete coding sequence of the CR1 gene and its deduced amino acid sequence is presented in Figure 1.

Any human cell can potentially serve as the nucleic acid source for the molecular cloning of the CR1 gene. Isolation of the CR1 gene involves the isolation of those DNA sequences which encode a protein displaying CR1-associated structure or properties, e.g., binding of C3b or C4b or immune complexes, modulating phagocytosis, immune stimulation or proliferation, and regulation of complement. The DNA may be obtained by standard procedures known in the art from cloned DNA (e.g., a DNA "library"), by chemical synthesis, by cDNA cloning, or by the cloning of genomic DNA, or fragments thereof, purified from the desired human cell. (See, for example, Maniatis et al., 1982, Molecular Cloning, A Laboratory Manual, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, Cold Spring Harbor, New York; Glover, D.M. (ed.), 1985, DNA Cloning: A Practical Approach, MRL Press, Ltd., Oxford, U.K., Vol. I, II.) Cells which can serve as sources of nucleic acid for cDNA cloning of the CR1 gene include but are not limited to monocytes/macrophages, granulocytes, B cells, T cells, splenic follicular dendritic cells, and glomerular podocytes. Clones derived from genomic DNA may contain regulatory and intron DNA regions in addition to coding regions; clones derived from cDNA will contain only exon sequences. Whatever the source, the CR1 gene should be molecularly cloned into a suitable vector for propagation of the gene.

In the molecular cloning of the gene from genomic DNA, DNA fragments are generated, some of which will encode the desired CR1 gene. The DNA may be cleaved at specific sites using various restriction enzymes. Alternatively, one may use DNase in the presence of manganese to fragment the DNA, or the DNA can be physically sheared, as for example, by sonication. The linear DNA fragments can then be

separated according to size by standard techniques, including but not limited to, agarose and polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis and column chromatography.

Once the DNA fragments are generated, identification of the specific DNA fragment containing the CR1 gene may be accomplished in a number of ways. For example, if an amount of a CR1 gene or its specific RNA, or a fragment thereof, is available and can be purified and labeled, the generated DNA fragments may be screened by nucleic acid hybridization to the labeled probe (Benton, W. and Davis, R., 1977, Science 196:180; Grunstein, M. and Hogness, D., 1975, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 72:3961). Those DNA fragments with substantial homology to the probe will hybridize. If a purified CR1-specific probe is unavailable, nucleic acid fractions enriched in CR1 may be used as a probe, as an initial selection procedure. As an example, the probe representing B cell cDNA from which messages expressed by fibroblasts have been subtracted can be used. It is also possible to identify the appropriate fragment by restriction enzyme digestion(s) and comparison of fragment sizes with those expected according to a known restriction map if such is available. Further selection on the basis of the properties of the gene, or the physical, chemical, or immunological properties of its expressed product, as described infra, can be employed after the initial selection.

The CR1 gene can also be identified by mRNA selection by nucleic acid hybridization followed by in vitro translation. In this procedure, fragments are used to isolate complementary mRNAs by hybridization. Such DNA fragments may represent available, purified CR1 DNA, or DNA that has been enriched for CR1 sequences. Immunoprecipitation analysis or functional assays (e.g., for C3b or C4b binding, or promotion of phagocytosis or immune stimulation, or complement regulation, etc.) of the in vitro

translation products of the isolated mRNAs identifies the mRNA and, therefore, the complementary DNA fragments that contain the CR1 sequences. In addition, specific mRNAs may be selected by adsorption of polysomes isolated from cells to immobilized antibodies specifically directed against CR1. A radiolabeled CR1 cDNA can be synthesized using the selected mRNA (from the adsorbed polysomes) as a template. The radiolabeled mRNA or cDNA may then be used as a probe to identify the CR1 DNA fragments from among other genomic DNA fragments.

Alternatives to isolating the CR1 genomic DNA include, but are not limited to, chemically synthesizing the gene sequence itself from a known sequence or making cDNA to the mRNA which encodes the CR1 gene. For example, as described supra, RNA for cDNA cloning of the CR1 gene can be isolated from cells including but not limited to monocytes/macrophages, granulocytes, B cells, T cells, dendritic cells, and podocytes. In a preferred embodiment, tonsillar cells can serve as the source of mRNA for cDNA cloning (See Section 6.1.2, infra). Other methods are possible and within the scope of the invention.

The identified and isolated gene can then be inserted into an appropriate cloning vector. A large number of vector-host systems known in the art may be used. Possible vectors include, but are not limited to, plasmids or modified viruses, but the vector system must be compatible with the host cell used. Such vectors include, but are not limited to, bacteriophages such as lambda derivatives, or plasmids such as pBR322 or pUC plasmid or CDM8 plasmid (Seed, B., 1987, Nature 329:840-842) or derivatives. Recombinant molecules can be introduced into host cells via transformation, transfection, infection, electroporation, etc.

In an alternative method, the CR1 gene may be identified and isolated after insertion into a suitable cloning vector, in a "shot gun" approach. Enrichment for the CR1 gene, for example, by size fractionation, can be done before insertion into the cloning vector.

5 The CR1 gene is inserted into a cloning vector which can be used to transform, transfect, or infect appropriate host cells so that many copies of the gene sequences are generated. In a specific embodiment, the cloning vector can be the CDM8 vector, which can be used to achieve expression in a mammalian host cell. The insertion into a cloning vector can, for example, be accomplished by ligating the DNA fragment into a cloning vector which has complementary cohesive termini. However, if the  
10 complementary restriction sites used to fragment the DNA are not present in the cloning vector, the ends of the DNA molecules may be enzymatically modified. Alternatively, any site desired may be produced by ligating nucleotide sequences (linkers) onto the DNA termini; these ligated  
15 linkers may comprise specific chemically synthesized oligonucleotides encoding restriction endonuclease recognition sequences. In an alternative method, the cleaved vector and CR1 gene may be modified by homopolymeric tailing.

25 Identification of the cloned CR1 gene can be accomplished in a number of ways based on the properties of the DNA itself, or alternatively, on the physical, immunological, or functional properties of its encoded protein. For example, the DNA itself may be detected by  
30 plaque or colony nucleic acid hybridization to labeled probes (Benton, W. and Davis, R., 1977, Science 196:180; Grunstein, M. and Hogness, D., 1975, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 72:3961). Alternatively, the presence of the CR1 gene may be detected by assays based on properties of its  
35 expressed product. For example, cDNA clones, or DNA clones

which hybrid-select the proper mRNAs, can be selected which produce a protein that, e.g., has similar or identical electrophoretic migration, isoelectric focusing behavior, proteolytic digestion maps, C3b and/or C4b and/or immune complex binding activity, complement regulatory activity, effects on phagocytosis or immune stimulation, or antigenic properties as known for CR1. Using an antibody to CR1, the CR1 protein may be identified by binding of labeled antibody to the putatively CR1-synthesizing clones, in an ELISA (enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay)-type procedure.

In specific embodiments, transformation of host cells with recombinant DNA molecules that incorporate the isolated CR1 gene, cDNA, or synthesized DNA sequence enables generation of multiple copies of the gene. Thus, the gene may be obtained in large quantities by growing transformants, isolating the recombinant DNA molecules from the transformants and, when necessary, retrieving the inserted gene from the isolated recombinant DNA.

In a particular embodiment, CR1 cDNA clones in a CDM8 vector can be transfected into COS (monkey kidney) cells for large-scale expression under the control of the cytomegalovirus promoter (see Section 8, infra).

If the ultimate goal is to insert the gene into virus expression vectors such as vaccinia virus or adenovirus, the recombinant DNA molecule that incorporates the CR1 gene can be modified so that the gene is flanked by virus sequences that allow for genetic recombination in cells infected with the virus so that the gene can be inserted into the viral genome.

After the CR1 DNA-containing clone has been identified, grown, and harvested, its DNA insert may be characterized as described in Section 5.4.1, infra.

When the genetic structure of the CR1 gene is known, it is possible to manipulate the structure for optimal use in the present invention. For example, promoter

DNA may be ligated 5' of the CR1-coding sequence, in addition to or replacement of the native promoter to provide for increased expression of the protein. Expression vectors which express CR1 deletion mutants can also be made, to provide for expression of defined fragments of the CR1 sequence (see the example sections, infra). In a particular embodiment, deletion mutants can be constructed which encode fragments of the CR1 protein that exhibit the desired C3b and/or C4b binding activity (see Section 9, infra), e.g., LHR-A for binding of C4b, or LHR-C for binding of C3b. In a preferred embodiment, an expression vector which encodes a CR1 molecule with a deletion of the transmembrane region can be used to produce a soluble CR1 molecule (see the examples sections 11-14, infra). Many manipulations are possible, and within the scope of the present invention.

#### 5.2. EXPRESSION OF THE CLONED CR1 GENE

The nucleotide sequence coding for the CR1 protein (Fig. 1) or a portion thereof, can be inserted into an appropriate expression vector, i.e., a vector which contains the necessary elements for the transcription and translation of the inserted protein-coding sequence. The necessary transcriptional and translation signals can also be supplied by the native CR1 gene and/or its flanking regions. A variety of host-vector systems may be utilized to express the protein-coding sequence. These include but are not limited to mammalian cell systems infected with virus (e.g., vaccinia virus, adenovirus, etc.); insect cell systems infected with virus (e.g., baculovirus); microorganisms such as yeast containing yeast vectors, or bacteria transformed with bacteriophage DNA, plasmid DNA or cosmid DNA. The expression elements of these vectors vary in their strength and specificity. Depending on the host-vector system utilized, any one of a number of suitable transcription and translation elements may be used. For



instance, when cloning in mammalian cell systems, promoters isolated from the genome of mammalian cells or from viruses that grow in these cells (e.g., adenovirus, simian virus 40, cytomegalovirus) may be used. Promoters produced by recombinant DNA or synthetic techniques may also be used to provide for transcription of the inserted sequences.

Specific initiation signals are also required for efficient translation of inserted protein coding sequences. These signals include the ATG initiation codon and adjacent sequences. In cases where the entire CR1 gene including its own initiation codon and adjacent sequences are inserted into the appropriate expression vectors, no additional translational control signals may be needed. However, in cases where only a portion of the CR1 coding sequence is inserted, exogenous translational control signals, including the ATG initiation codon, must be provided. The initiation codon must furthermore be in phase with the reading frame of the protein coding sequences to ensure translation of the entire insert. These exogenous translational control signals and initiation codons can be of a variety of origins, both natural and synthetic.

Any of the methods previously described for the insertion of DNA fragments into a vector may be used to construct expression vectors containing a chimeric gene consisting of appropriate transcriptional/translational control signals and the protein coding sequences. These methods may include in vitro recombinant DNA and synthetic techniques and in vivo recombinations (genetic recombination).

In a specific embodiment, a soluble CR1 molecule can be expressed. Such a soluble molecule can be produced by use of recombinant DNA techniques to delete the DNA sequences encoding the CR1 transmembrane region (see Sections 11-14, infra). As demonstrated infra, the ability to express a soluble CR1 molecule is not limited to any one

genetic modification of the CR1 nucleic acid sequence; as long as the nucleic acid sequence encoding a substantial portion of the CR1 transmembrane region is deleted, soluble CR1 constructs can be obtained.

5 Expression vectors containing CR1 gene inserts can be identified by three general approaches: (a) DNA-DNA hybridization, (b) presence or absence of "marker" gene functions, and (c) expression of inserted sequences. In the first approach, the presence of a foreign gene inserted in an expression vector can be detected by DNA-DNA  
10 hybridization using probes comprising sequences that are homologous to the inserted CR1 gene. In the second approach, the recombinant vector/host system can be identified and selected based upon the presence or absence of certain "marker" gene functions (e.g., thymidine kinase activity, resistance to antibiotics, transformation  
15 phenotype, occlusion body formation in baculovirus, etc.) caused by the insertion of foreign genes into the vector. For example, if the CR1 gene is inserted within the marker gene sequence of the vector, recombinants containing the CR1  
20 insert can be identified by the absence of the marker gene function. In the third approach, recombinant expression vectors can be identified by assaying the foreign gene product expressed by the recombinant. Such assays can be based on the physical, immunological, or functional  
25 properties of the gene product.

Once a particular recombinant DNA molecule is identified and isolated, several methods known in the art may be used to propagate it. Once a suitable host system and growth conditions are established, recombinant  
30 expression vectors can be propagated and prepared in quantity.

In a particular embodiment detailed in the examples of the present invention, CDM8 vectors with an CR1  
35 cDNA insert can be transfected into COS cells, in which the

CR1 cDNA insert is expressed to produce the CR1 protein. In other particular embodiments detailed in the examples sections infra, CDM8 vectors with a CR1 cDNA insert corresponding to a portion of the CR1 coding region can be transfected into COS cells, where the CR1 or fragment is  
5 expressed. Per yet another example, infra, truncated, soluble CR1 molecules can be expressed in mammalian cells by use of expression vectors such as the pTCS vectors described in Section 11.3.1. As previously explained, the expression  
10 vectors which can be used include, but are not limited to, the following vectors or their derivatives: human or animal viruses such as vaccinia virus or adenovirus; insect viruses such as baculovirus; yeast vectors; bacteriophage vectors (e.g., lambda), and plasmid and cosmid DNA vectors, to name  
15 but a few.

In addition, a host cell strain may be chosen which modulates the expression of the inserted sequences, or modifies and processes the chimeric gene product in the specific fashion desired. Expression from certain promoters  
20 can be elevated in the presence of certain inducers; thus, expression of the genetically engineered CR1 protein may be controlled. Furthermore, different host cells have characteristic and specific mechanisms for the translational and post-translational processing and modification of  
25 proteins. Appropriate cell lines or host systems can be chosen to ensure the desired modification and processing of the expressed heterologous protein. For example, in one embodiment, expression in a bacterial system can be used to produce an unglycosylated CR1 protein with the deduced amino  
30 acid sequence of Figure 1. Expression in yeast will produce a glycosylated product. In another embodiment, mammalian COS cells can be used to ensure "native" glycosylation of the heterologous CR1 protein. Furthermore, different vector/host expression systems may effect processing

reactions such as proteolytic cleavages to different extents. Many such variously processed CR1 proteins can be produced and are within the scope of the present invention.

5 In a preferred embodiment of the invention, large scale production of soluble CR1 molecules may be carried out as described infra in Section 12.1 et seq.

### 5.3. IDENTIFICATION AND PURIFICATION OF THE EXPRESSED GENE PRODUCT

10 Once a recombinant which expresses the CR1 gene is identified, the gene product should be analyzed. This can be achieved by assays based on the physical, immunological, or functional properties of the product.

15 The CR1 proteins may be isolated and purified by standard methods including chromatography (e.g., ion exchange, affinity, and sizing column chromatography, high pressure liquid chromatography), centrifugation, differential solubility, or by any other standard technique for the purification of proteins.

20 In a preferred aspect of the invention detailed in the examples infra, large quantities of soluble CR1 can be purified by procedures involving HPLC (see Section 12.2 et seq.). As described infra, large-scale production of purified CR1 can be achieved by using an expression system which produces soluble CR1 as starting material, thus  
25 eliminating the requirement of solubilizing membrane-bound CR1 with detergents. The reduction of fetal calf serum concentrations in the bioreactor cultures and/or the use of alternative culture medias in these cultures eliminates the need to remove high concentrations of extraneous proteins  
30 from the soluble CR1-containing starting material during subsequent purification. Either cation HPLC or a combination of cation HPLC followed by anion exchange HPLC

can be used for purification in this preferred aspect. Substantially pure soluble CR1 in high yield can thus be achieved in only one or two steps.

5 Alternatively, once a CR1 protein produced by a recombinant is identified, the amino acid sequence of the protein can be deduced from the nucleotide sequence of the chimeric gene contained in the recombinant. As a result, the protein can be synthesized by standard chemical methods known in the art (e.g., see Hunkapiller, M., et al., 1984, Nature 310:105-111).

10 In particular embodiments of the present invention, such CR1 proteins, whether produced by recombinant DNA techniques or by chemical synthetic methods, include but are not limited to those containing, as a primary amino acid sequence, all or part of the amino acid sequence substantially as depicted in Figure 1, including altered sequences in which functionally equivalent amino acid residues are substituted for residues within the sequence resulting in a silent change. For example, one or more amino acid residues within the sequence can be substituted by another amino acid of a similar polarity which acts as a functional equivalent, resulting in a silent alteration. Nonconservative substitutions can also result in functionally equivalent proteins.

25 In one embodiment, substitutes for an amino acid within the CR1 sequence may be selected from other members of the class to which the amino acid belongs. For example, the nonpolar (hydrophobic) amino acids include alanine, leucine, isoleucine, valine, proline, phenylalanine, tryptophan and methionine. The polar neutral amino acids include glycine, serine, threonine, cysteine, tyrosine, asparagine, and glutamine. The positively charged (basic) amino acids include arginine, lysine and histidine. The negatively charged (acidic) amino acids include aspartic acid and glutamic acid. Also included within the scope of

30  
35

the invention are CR1 proteins which are differentially modified during or after translation, e.g., by glycosylation, proteolytic cleavage, etc.

5 In an example of the invention detailed infra, cloned recombinant CR1 expressed by transfected cells was shown to be indistinguishable from the F allotype of erythrocytes by SDS-PAGE (Fig. 14), capable of mediating the binding of sheep erythrocytes bearing either C4b or C3b, and able to reproduce the ligand specificity of CR1 (Fig. 13),  
10 and exhibit factor I co-factor activity for cleavage of the alpha polypeptide of C3(ma) (Fig. 15).

#### 5.4. STRUCTURE OF THE CR1 GENE AND PROTEIN

15 The structure of the CR1 gene and protein can be analyzed by various methods known in the art, including but not limited to those described infra.

##### 5.4.1. GENETIC ANALYSIS

20 The cloned DNA or cDNA corresponding to the CR1 gene can be analyzed by methods including but not limited to Southern hybridization (Southern, E.M., 1975, J. Mol. Biol. 98:503-517), Northern hybridization (see e.g., Freeman et al., 1983, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 80:4094-4098), restriction endonuclease mapping (Maniatis, T., 1982,  
25 Molecular Cloning, A Laboratory Manual, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, Cold Spring Harbor, New York), and DNA sequence analysis. The stringency of the hybridization conditions for both Southern and Northern hybridization can be manipulated to ensure detection of nucleic acids with the  
30 desired degree of relatedness to the specific CR1 probe used. For example, hybridization under low stringency conditions with a probe containing CR1 gene sequences encoding LHR-B and LHR-C, can be used to detect CR2 nucleic acid sequences.

Restriction endonuclease mapping can be used to roughly determine the genetic structure of the CR1 gene. In a particular embodiment, cleavage with restriction enzymes can be used to derive the restriction map shown in Figure 2, infra. Restriction maps derived by restriction endonuclease cleavage can be confirmed by DNA sequence analysis.

DNA sequence analysis can be performed by any techniques known in the art, including but not limited to the method of Maxam and Gilbert (1980, Meth. Enzymol. 65:499-560), the Sanger dideoxy method (Sanger, F., et al., 1977, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 74:5463), or use of an automated DNA sequenator (e.g., Applied Biosystems, Foster City, CA.). The cDNA sequence of the CR1 gene comprises the sequence substantially as depicted in Figure 1, and described in Sections 6 and 7, infra.

#### 5.4.2. PROTEIN ANALYSIS

The amino acid sequence of the CR1 protein can be derived by deduction from the DNA sequence, or alternatively, by direct sequencing of the protein, e.g., with an automated amino acid sequencer. The amino acid sequence of a representative CR1 protein comprises the sequence substantially as depicted in Figure 1, and detailed in Section 6, infra. As described infra, all of the coding sequence of the F allotype CR1 has been cloned and, after cleavage of the signal peptide of 41 amino acids, the mature receptor contained 1998 amino acids including an extracellular domain of 1930 residues that forms 30 SCRs, 28 of which are organized into LHRs-A, -B, -C and -D, (Fig. 10), a single membrane spanning domain of 25 amino acids and a relatively short cytoplasmic domain of 43 amino acids.

Among the C3/C4 binding proteins that contain multiple SCRs, CR1 is unique in having groups of SCRs organized into LHRs. Comparison of the four LHRs of CR1

reveals that each is a composite of four types of SCRs: types a, b, c and d (Fig. 19). For example, the sequences of SCR-1 and -2 of LHR-A are only 62%, 62% and 57% identical to the first two SCRs of LHR-B, -C and -D, respectively. However, SCR-3 through SCR-7 differ from the corresponding SCRs of LHR-B at only a single position, and SCR-3 and -4 differ from those of LHR-C at only three positions (Fig. 10). Thus, some of the type "a" SCRs of LHR-A are also present in LHR-B and -C. The first two SCRs of LHR-B, which differ from those of LHR-A, are 99% identical with the corresponding SCRs of LHR-C, so that LHR-B and -C share the type "b" SCR at these positions. The fifth, sixth and seventh SCR of LHR-C are only 77% identical to the type "a" SCRs in LHR-A and -B at these positions, and are considered as type "c" SCRs. The first through fourth SCRs of LHR-D are relatively unique and are type "d", while the fifth through seventh SCRs are approximately 93% identical to the "c" type found in LHR-C.

The CR1 protein sequence can be further characterized by a hydrophilicity analysis (Hopp, T. and Woods, K., 1981, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 78:3824). A hydrophilicity profile can be used to identify the hydrophobic and hydrophilic regions of the CR1 protein and the corresponding regions of the gene sequence which encode such regions. A hydrophilicity profile of the COOH-terminus of the CR1 protein is depicted in Figure 5.

Secondary structural analysis (Chou, P. and Fasman, G., 1974, Biochemistry 13:222) can also be done, to predict regions of CR1 that assume specific secondary structures.

Other methods of structural analysis can also be employed. These include but are not limited to X-ray crystallography (Engstrom, A., 1974, Biochem. Exp. Biol. 11:7-13) and computer modeling (Fletterick, R. and Zoller,



M. (eds.), 1986, Computer Graphics and Molecular Modeling, in Current Communications in Molecular Biology, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, Cold Spring Harbor, New York).

5.5. CR1-RELATED DERIVATIVES, ANALOGUES, AND PEPTIDES

5           The production and use of derivatives, analogues, and peptides related to CR1 are also envisioned, and within the scope of the present invention. Such derivatives, analogues, or peptides which have the desired immunogenicity or antigenicity can be used, for example, in immunoassays, 10 for immunization, therapeutically, etc. Such molecules which retain, or alternatively inhibit, a desired CR1 property, e.g., binding of C3b or C4b, regulation of complement activity, or promotion of immune stimulation or phagocytosis, etc., can be used as inducers, or inhibitors, 15 respectively, of such property.

          The CR1-related derivatives, analogues, and peptides of the invention can be produced by various methods known in the art. The manipulations which result in their production can occur at the gene or protein level. For 20 example, the cloned CR1 gene can be modified by any of numerous strategies known in the art (Maniatis, T., 1982, Molecular Cloning, A Laboratory Manual, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, Cold Spring Harbor, New York). The CR1 sequence 25 can be cleaved at appropriate sites with restriction endonuclease(s), followed by further enzymatic modification if desired, isolated, and ligated in vitro (see Section 8, infra). In the production of the gene encoding a derivative, analogue, or peptide related to CR1, care should 30 be taken to ensure that the modified gene remains within the same translational reading frame as CR1, uninterrupted by translational stop signals, in the gene region where the desired CR1-specific activity is encoded. In a particular

embodiment, nucleic acid sequences encoding a fusion protein, consisting of a molecule comprising a portion of the CR1 sequence plus a non-CR1 sequence, can be produced.

5 Additionally, the CR1 gene can be mutated in vitro or in vivo, to create and/or destroy translation, initiation, and/or termination sequences, or to create variations in coding regions and/or form new restriction endonuclease sites or destroy preexisting ones, to facilitate further in vitro modification. Any technique for mutagenesis known in the art can be used, including but not limited to, in vitro site-directed mutagenesis (Hutchinson, 10 C., et al., 1978, J. Biol. Chem. 253:6551), use of TAB® linkers (Pharmacia), etc.

15 Manipulations of the CR1 sequence may also be made at the protein level. Any of numerous chemical modifications may be carried out by known techniques, including but not limited to specific chemical cleavage by cyanogen bromide, trypsin, chymotrypsin, papain, V8 protease, NaBH<sub>4</sub>; acetylation, formylation, oxidation, reduction; metabolic synthesis in the presence of 20 tunicamycin; etc.

In addition, analogues and peptides related to CR1 can be chemically synthesized. For example, a peptide corresponding to a portion of CR1 which mediates the desired activity (e.g., C3b and/or C4b binding, immune stimulation, 25 complement regulation, etc.) can be synthesized by use of a peptide synthesizer.

Specific modifications of the nucleotide sequence of CR1 can be made by recombinant DNA procedures that result 30 in sequences encoding a protein having multiple LHR-B sequences. Such valency modifications alter the extent of C3b binding.

## 5.6. USES OF CR1

### 5.6.1. ASSAYS AND DIAGNOSIS

CR1 proteins, analogues, derivatives, and subsequences thereof, and anti-CR1 antibodies, have uses in assays and in diagnostics. The molecules of the invention which demonstrate the desired CR1 property or function can be used to assay such property or function. For example, CR1 proteins or fragments thereof, which exhibit binding of C3b and/or C4b, in free and/or in complex forms, can be used in assays to measure the amount of such substances in a sample, e.g., a body fluid of a patient.

In a specific embodiment, full-length CR1 or a CR1 deletion mutant expressed on the cell surface (e.g., those described in Section 8, infra) having the ability to bind C3b (e.g., see Table II, Section 9, infra), iC3b or C4b (e.g., see Table II) can be used in assays to measure the levels of C3b, iC3b, or C4b, respectively, in a sample. In another embodiment, a CR1 protein or fragment thereof which is constructed by recombinant DNA technology to lack a transmembrane sequence, and is thus secreted, can be used.

In a particular embodiment, such a measurement of C3b and/or C4b can be relied on as an indication of complement activity, and can be useful in the diagnosis of inflammatory and immune system disorders. Such disorders include but are not limited to tissue damage due to burn- or myocardial infarct-induced trauma, adult respiratory distress syndrome (shock lung), autoimmune disorders such as rheumatoid arthritis, systemic lupus erythematosus, and other diseases or disorders involving undesirable or inappropriate complement activity (see, e.g., Miescher, P.A. and Muller-Eberhard, H.J., eds., 1976, Text Book of Immunopathology, 2d Ed., Vols. I and II, Grune and Stratton, New York; Sandberg, A.L., 1981, in Cellular Functions in Immunity and Inflammation, Oppenheim, J.J. et al., eds.,

Elsevier/North Holland, New York, p. 373; Conrow, R.B. et al., 1980, J. Med. Chem. 23:242; Regal, J.F. and Pickering, R.H., 1983, Int. J. Immunopharmacol. 5:71; Jacobs, H.S., 1980, Arch. Pathol. Lab. Med. 104:617).

5           The CR1 protein and fragments thereof containing  
an epitope have uses in assays including but not limited to  
immunoassays. The immunoassays which can be used include  
but are not limited to competitive and non-competitive assay  
systems using techniques such as radioimmunoassays, ELISA  
10 (enzyme linked immunosorbent assay), "sandwich"  
immunoassays, precipitin reactions, gel diffusion precipitin  
reactions, immunodiffusion assays, agglutination assays,  
complement-fixation assays, immunoradiometric assays,  
fluorescent immunoassays, protein A immunoassays, and  
15 immunoelectrophoresis assays, to name but a few.

CR1 genes and related nucleic acid sequences and  
subsequences, can be used in hybridization assays. Such  
hybridization assays can be used to monitor inflammatory or  
immune responses associated with CR1 expression, to diagnose  
20 certain disease states associated with changes in CR1  
expression, to determine the CR1 allotype of a patient, and  
to detect the presence and/or expression of the CR1 gene and  
related genes (e.g., CR2).

Kits for practicing the assays for use in the  
25 present invention are also provided.

#### 5.6.2. THERAPY

The CR1 protein and fragments, derivatives, and  
analogues thereof can be therapeutically useful in the  
30 modulation of functions mediated by CR1. Such functions  
include but are not limited to binding of C3b and/or C4b, in  
free or in complex forms, promotion of phagocytosis,  
complement regulation, immune stimulation, etc. Effective  
doses of the CR1 proteins and related molecules of the  
35 invention have therapeutic value for many of the diseases or

disorders associated with such functions, such as immune or inflammatory disorders (e.g., those described supra in Section 5.6.1). For example, full-length CR1 or fragments thereof and related molecules which exhibit the desired activity can have therapeutic uses in the inhibition of complement by their ability to act as a factor I cofactor, promoting the irreversible inactivation of complement components C3b or C4b (Fearon, D.T., 1979, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 76:5867; Iida, K. and Nussenzweig, V., 1981, J. Exp. Med. 153:1138), and/or by the ability to inhibit the alternative or classical C3 or C5 convertases.

In a specific embodiment of the invention, an expression vector can be constructed to encode a CR1 molecule which lacks the transmembrane region (e.g., by deletion carboxy-terminal to the arginine encoded by the most C-terminal SCR), resulting in the production of a soluble CR1 fragment. In one embodiment, such a fragment can retain the ability to bind C3b and/or C4b, in free or in complex forms. In a particular embodiment, such a soluble CR1 protein may no longer exhibit factor I cofactor activity. The soluble CR1 product can be administered in vivo to a patient, so that the soluble CR1 can effectively compete out binding of the C3b and/or C4b to the native cell-surface CR1, thus blocking cell-surface CR1 factor I cofactor activity, and increasing complement activity.

After C3b has covalently attached to particles and soluble immune complexes, the inactivation of C3b by proteolytic processing into iC3b and C3dg has two biologic consequences: preventing excessive activation of the complement system via the amplification pathway, and formation of ligands that can engage receptors other than CR1. The iC3b fragment cannot bind factor B so that conversion to this state blocks additional complement activation via the alternative pathway amplification loop. However, iC3b can be bound by CR1 and CR3, the two

complement receptors that mediate phagocytosis by myelomonocytic cells. Therefore, the primary biologic consequence of C3b to iC3b conversion is cessation of complement activation without interference with CR1- and CR3-mediated clearance of the C3-coated complex. In contrast, the additional conversion of iC3b to C3dg creates a fragment that interacts only with CR2 and not with CR1 and CR3. This circumstance limits complement-dependent binding of the C3dg-bearing complex to cell types expressing CR2, which include B lymphocytes, follicular dendritic cells and perhaps epithelial cells of the dermis, and diminishes or excludes interaction with phagocytic cell types. The biologic consequence of this altered pattern of cellular association would be targeting of the C3dg-bearing complexes to cells involved in the afferent phase of the immune response rather than to cells involved in clearance and degradation of particles and complexes. Therefore, CR1 molecules may be used therapeutically not only to affect the clearance process, but also in the targeting of complexes to the CR2-bearing cell types that participate in antigen presentation and antibody production.

In an alternative embodiment, a CR1 protein or fragment thereof which can bind C3b or C4b, and/or retains the ability to inhibit the alternative or classical C3 or C5 convertases, or retains factor I cofactor activity, can be used to promote complement inactivation. In such an embodiment, the CR1 protein or fragment can be valuable in the treatment of disorders which involve undesirable or inappropriate complement activity (e.g., shock lung, tissue damage due to burn or ischemic heart conditions, autoimmune disorders, inflammatory conditions, etc.).

In a specific embodiment detailed in the examples Sections 11-14 infra, a soluble CR1 molecule can be expressed which retains a desired functional activity, as demonstrated, e.g., by the ability to inhibit classical

complement-mediated hemolysis, classical C5a production, classical C3a production, or neutrophil oxidative burst in vitro. In a particular embodiment, such a soluble CR1 molecule can be used to reduce inflammation and its detrimental effects, or to reduce myocardial infarct size or prevent reperfusion injury, etc. Such CR1 molecules useful for in vivo therapy may be tested in various model systems known in the art, including but not limited to the reversed passive Arthrus reaction (see Section 14.1) and a rat myocardial infarct model (see Section 14.3).

In another embodiment of the invention, a fragment of CR1, or an analogue or derivative thereof, which is shown to inhibit a desired CR1 property or function, can be used to prevent or treat diseases or disorders associated with that function.

Various delivery systems are known and can be used for delivery of CR1 and related molecules, e.g., encapsulation in liposomes, microparticles, or microcapsules, expression by hematopoietic stem cell progeny in gene therapy, etc. Other methods of introduction include but are not limited to intradermal, intramuscular, intraperitoneal, intravenous, subcutaneous, intranasal, and oral routes.

The present invention also provides pharmaceutical compositions. Such compositions comprise a therapeutically effective amount of a CR1 protein, or an analogue, derivative, or fragment thereof, and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier. Such a carrier includes but is not limited to saline, buffered saline, dextrose, and water.

### 5.6.3. COMBINATION THERAPY

In a further aspect there is provided a method of treating thrombotic conditions, especially acute myocardial infarction, in humans and animals, which method comprises

administering to a human or animal in need thereof an effective amount of a soluble CR1 protein according to the invention and an effective amount of a thrombolytic agent.

5 The invention also provides the use of a soluble CR1 protein and a thrombolytic agent in the manufacture of a medicament for the treatment of thrombotic conditions in humans and animals.

10 In the above method, the compounds may be administered by any convenient route, for example by infusion or bolus injection, and may be administered sequentially or together. When the soluble CR1 protein according to the invention and the thrombolytic agent are administered sequentially, the soluble CR1 protein may be administered either before or after the thrombolytic agent. 15 When the soluble CR1 protein and the thrombolytic agent are administered together they are preferably given in the form of a pharmaceutical composition comprising both agents. Thus, in a further aspect of the invention there is provided a pharmaceutical composition comprising a soluble CR1 20 protein and a thrombolytic agent together with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

In a preferred embodiment, the composition may be formulated in accordance with routine procedures as a pharmaceutical composition adapted for intravenous 25 administration to human beings.

Typically compositions for intravenous administration are solutions in sterile isotonic aqueous buffer. Where necessary, the composition may also include a solubilizing agent and a local anaesthetic such as 30 lignocaine to ease pain at the site of the injection. Generally, the ingredients will be supplied either separately or mixed together in unit dosage form, for example, as a dry lyophilised powder or water free concentrate in a hermetically sealed container such as an 35 ampoule or sachette indicating the quantity of active agent



in activity units. Where the composition is to be administered by infusion, it can be dispensed with an infusion bottle containing sterile pharmaceutical grade 'Water for Injection' or saline. Where the composition is to be administered by injection, an ampoule of sterile water for injection or saline may be provided so that the ingredients may be mixed prior to administration.

A pharmaceutical pack comprising one or more containers filled with one or more of the ingredients of the pharmaceutical composition is also within the scope of the invention.

The quantity of material administered, and the ratio of thrombolytic agent to CR1 protein, will depend upon the seriousness of the thromboembolic condition and position and size of the clot. The precise dose to be employed and mode of administration must per force in view of the nature of the complaint be decided according to the circumstances by the physician supervising treatment. However, in general, a patient being treated for a thrombus will generally receive a dose of from 0.5 to 50 mg of complement inhibitor (soluble CR1 component) per standard dose of thrombolytic agent.

Particular thrombolytic agents for use in combination therapy as described above are fibrinolytic enzymes, including plasminogen activators.

The term plasminogen activator includes but is not limited to streptokinase, human tissue plasminogen activator (t-PA) and urokinase (u-PA) (both single and two-chain forms). Such enzymes are obtained from natural sources or tissues or by recombinant DNA methods where heterologous host organisms such as bacteria, yeasts, fungi or mammalian cells express genes specifying the enzymes. The term also includes:

-44-

(a) proteins disclosed in EP(European Patent Publication)-A-0155387 and EP-A-0297882 which disclose a fibrinolytically active hybrid protein which comprises one chain of a 2-chain protease linked to a chain of a different 2-chain protease, at least one of the chains in the hybrid protein being derived from a fibrinolytically active protease, such that the hybrid protein has a catalytic site essential for fibrinolytic activity which is optionally blocked by a removable blocking group;

(b) protein conjugates disclosed in EP-A-0152736, such as urokinase linked to reversibly blocked plasmin;

(c) derivatives of fibrinolytic enzymes disclosed in EP-A-0155388 in which the catalytic site on the enzyme which is responsible for fibrinolytic activity is blocked by a human protein attached thereto by way of a reversible linking group, for example urokinase reversibly linked to the active centre of human plasmin;

(d) conjugates comprising a fibrinolytic enzyme linked to a water-soluble polymer by means of a reversible linking group as disclosed in EP-A-0183503; and

(e) genetically engineered derivatives including muteins of naturally occurring plasminogen activators such as those disclosed in EP-A-0201153, EP-A-0207589, WO(PCT Publication)-8604351, EP-0041766, EP-0213794, EP-0199574, EP-A-0240334, EP-A-0241208, EP-A-0241209, EP-A-0241210, EP-A-0233013, EP-A-290118, EP-A-292326, EP-A-0213794, EP-A-0231883, WO 8704722, EP-A-0242836, EP-A-0234051, EP-A-0253582, EP-A-0253241, WO-8604351, EP-A-0236040, EP-A-0200451, EP-A-0238304, EP-A-0225286, DE(West German Publication)-3537176, EP-A-0236289, WO-8601538, EP-0227462, AU(Australian Publication)-8661804, WO-8703906 and EP-0199574, such as des(cys<sub>51</sub>-asp<sub>87</sub>)t-PA.

35

In a particular aspect of the invention, the plasminogen activator is a hybrid molecule as described in EP-A-0297882 which comprises the five kringle domains of plasminogen linked to the B-chain of t-PA or u-PA via an amino acid sequence comprising, respectively, the t-PA  
5 cleavage site between residues 275 and 276 and the cysteine residue 264 of t-PA or the u-PA cleavage site between residues 158 and 159 and the cysteine residue 148 of u-PA.

Examples of such hybrids include plasminogen 1-544/t-PA 262-527 including one and two chain variants, lys<sub>78</sub> and glu<sub>1</sub> variants, and mixtures thereof;  
10

plasminogen 1-544/t-PA 262-527 (arg<sub>275</sub> gln) including one and two chain variants, lys<sub>78</sub> and glu<sub>1</sub> variants, and mixtures thereof;

plasminogen 1-541/t-PA 262-527 including one and two chain variants, lys<sub>78</sub> and glu<sub>1</sub> variants, and mixtures thereof;  
15

t-PA 1-50/t-PA 88-91/pro-gly-ser/plasminogen 84-544/t-PA 262-527 including one and two chain variants, gly<sub>-3</sub>, ser<sub>1</sub> and val<sub>4</sub> variants, and mixtures thereof;  
20

t-PA 1-91/pro-gly-ser/plasminogen 84-544/t-PA 262-527 including one and two chain variants, gly<sub>-3</sub>, ser<sub>1</sub> and val<sub>4</sub> variants, and mixtures thereof; or

plasminogen 1-546/u-PA 137-411 including one and two chain variants, lys<sub>78</sub> and glu<sub>1</sub> variants, and mixtures thereof.  
25

In a preferred embodiment, the thrombolytic agent for use in combination therapy is a reversibly blocked in vivo fibrinolytic enzyme having the meaning given by Smith in U.S. Patent No. 4,285,932, i.e., an in vivo fibrinolytic enzyme wherein the catalytic site essential for fibrinolytic activity is blocked by a group which is removable by hydrolysis at a rate such that the pseudo-first order rate constant for hydrolysis is in the range  $10^{-6} \text{ sec}^{-1}$  to  $10^{-3} \text{ sec}^{-1}$  in isotonic aqueous media at pH 7.4 at 37°C.  
30  
35

Where the fibrinolytic enzyme is a plasminogen activator comprising a serine protease domain of t-PA or urokinase, an example of a removable blocking group is a 2-aminobenzoyl group substituted in the 3- or 4-position with a halogen atom and optionally further substituted with one or more weakly electron-withdrawing or electron-donating groups, wherein the pseudo first order rate constant for hydrolysis of the derivative is in the range of  $6.0 \times 10^{-5}$  to  $4.0 \times 10^{-4} \text{ sec}^{-1}$  when measured in a buffer system consisting of 0.05 M sodium phosphate, 0.1 M sodium chloride, 0.01% v/v detergent comprising polyoxyethylene-sorbitan monoleate having a molecular weight of approximately 1300, at pH 7.4 at 37°C.

Preferably, the reversibly blocked in vivo fibrinolytic enzyme is a binary complex between streptokinase and plasminogen, most preferably a p-anisoyl streptokinase/plasminogen complex without internal bond cleavage as described in U.S. Patent No. 4,808,405, marketed by Beecham Group plc under the Trademark EMINASE (generic name anistreplase, hereinafter referred to as APSAC, i.e. anisoylated human plasminogen-streptokinase-activator complex; see for example J. P. Monk and R. C. Heel, 1987, Drugs 34:25-49).

In a preferred aspect, the soluble CR1 component used in combination therapy is encoded by a nucleic acid vector selected from the group consisting of pBSCR1c, pBSCR1s, pBM-CR1c, pBSCR1c/pTCSgpt and pBSCR1s/pTCSgpt and is especially that prepared from pBSCR1c/pTCSgpt as described above (see Section 12).

Particular thrombolytics for use in combination therapy (with examples of dose and method of administration) are as follows:

Streptokinase	1.0-3.0 megaunits over 30 minutes to 3 hours
APSAC	30 units 2-5 minute injection
t-PA (wild-type)	50-150 mg Infusion up to 6 hours

-47-

	Two-chain	40-100 mg	Infusion up to 6 hours
	urokinase	(3-12 megaunits)	
	Single-chain	30-100 mg	Infusion up to 5 hours
	urokinase		
5	Hybrid plasminogen	20-100 mg	Injection or infusion
	activators and		
	acyl derivatives		
	(as in e.g.		
	EP-A-0155387)		
10	Mutins of	10-100 mg	Injection or infusion
	plasminogen		
	activators		
	(as in e.g.		
	EP-A-0207589)		

15

6. EXAMPLE: THE CLONING AND SEQUENCING OF  
THE HUMAN C3b/C4b RECEPTOR (CR1)

In the examples detailed herein, we describe the cloning and nucleotide sequence of 5.5 kilobase pairs (kb) of the CR1 coding region (Klickstein, L.B., et al., 1987, J. Exp. Med. 165:1095-1112).

Ten overlapping CR1 cDNA clones that span 5.5 kb were isolated from a tonsillar library and sequenced in whole or in part. A single long open reading frame beginning at the 5' end of the clones and extending 4.7 kb downstream to a stop codon was identified. This sequence represents ~80% of the estimated 6 kb of coding sequence for the F allotype of CR1. Three tandem, direct, long homologous repeats (LHRs) of 450 amino acids were identified. Analysis of the sequences of tryptic peptides provided evidence for a fourth LHR in the F allotype of CR1. Amino acid identity between the LHRs ranged from 70% between the first and third repeats to 99% between the NH<sub>2</sub>-terminal 250 amino acids of the first and second repeats. Each LHR comprises seven short consensus repeats (SCRs) of 60-70

-48-

amino acids that resemble the SCRs of other C3/C4 binding proteins, such as complement receptor type 2, factors B and H, C4 binding protein, and C2. Two additional SCRs join the LHRs to a single membrane-spanning domain of 25 amino acids: thus, the F allotype of CR1 probably contains at least 30 SCRs, 23 of which have been sequenced. Each SCR is predicted to form a triple loop structure in which the four conserved half-cystines form disulfide-linkages. The linear alignment of 30 SCRs as a semi-rigid structure would extend 1,140 Angstroms from the plasma membrane and might facilitate the interaction of CR1 with C3b and C4b located within the interstices of immune complexes and microbial cell walls. The COOH-terminal cytoplasmic domain of 43 residues contains a six amino acid sequence that is homologous to the sequence in the epidermal growth factor receptor that is phosphorylated by protein kinase C.

#### 6.1. MATERIALS AND METHODS

##### 20 6.1.1. ISOLATION AND SEQUENCE OF CR1 TRYPTIC PEPTIDES

CR1 was purified from washed human erythrocyte membranes by sequential Matrex Red A and YZ-1 monoclonal antibody affinity chromatography (Wong, W.W., et al., 1985, J. Immunol. Methods 82:303). Tryptic peptides were prepared and isolated by sequential gradient and isocratic reverse-phase HPLC (high performance liquid chromatography) as described (Wong, W.W., et al., 1985, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 82:7711). Tryptic peptide analysis was performed with a 470A Protein Sequencer (Applied Biosystems, Inc., Foster City, CA), and analysis of each degradative cycle was achieved using a 120 PTH-amino acid analyzer (Applied Biosystems, Inc.).

35

6.1.2. ISOLATION OF cDNA CLONES AND GENOMIC CLONES

A cDNA library was constructed in  $\lambda$ gt11 from human tonsillar poly(A)<sup>+</sup> RNA as described (Wong, W.W., et al., 1985, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 82:7711). By RNA blot hybridization, the tonsil donor was homozygous for the F allele of CR1 (id.). The cDNA was selected on an agarose gel to include fractions between 2 and 7 kb before the cloning steps. The initial complexity of the library was  $4.5 \times 10^6$  recombinants per 100 ng cDNA and the library was amplified in Escherichia coli strain Y1088. The library was screened (Maniatis, T., et al., 1982, Molecular Cloning, A Laboratory Manual, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, Cold Spring Harbor, New York) with CR1 probes, CR1-1 (ATCC accession nos. 57330 (E. coli containing CR1-1 plasmid), 57331 (purified CR1-1 DNA)) and CR1-2 (Wong, W.W., et al., 1985, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 82:7711); that had been radiolabeled to a specific activity of  $2-8 \times 10^8$  cpm/ $\mu$ g by nick translation. Hybridization was performed in 50% formamide, 5x SSC (1x SSC: 15 mM sodium citrate, 150 mM sodium chloride) at 43°C and filters were washed at 60°C in 0.2x SSC, conditions that do not allow the detection of CR2 cDNA clones (Weis, J.J., et al., 1986, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 83:5639). Positive clones were plaque-purified twice before restriction mapping and DNA sequence analysis.

A genomic library was constructed in EMBL-3 with 15-20 kb fragments produced by partial digestion of human leukocyte DNA with Sau3AI. The initial complexity was  $1.2 \times 10^6$ , and the library was amplified in E. coli strain P2392. The library was also screened with the cDNA probes CR1-1 and CR1-2 (Wong, W.W., et al., 1985, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 82:7711).

### 6.1.3. DNA SEQUENCE ANALYSIS

Restriction fragments of the cDNA clones were subcloned in M13mp18 or M13mp19 and sequenced by the dideoxynucleotide chain termination method (Sanger, F., et al., 1977, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 74:5463). Some clones were sequenced in whole or in part by first creating ordered deletion mutants using exonuclease III (Henikoff, S., 1984, Gene 28:351). Each region was sequenced on both strands and in most cases each region was sequenced on M13 subclones constructed from two independently isolated cDNA clones (Fig. 2). Sequence data were analyzed with the University of Wisconsin Genetics Computer Group package (Madison, WI).

## 6.2. RESULTS

### 6.2.1. NUCLEOTIDE SEQUENCE OF THE CR1 GENE

A size-selected tonsillar cDNA library was screened with the CR1-1 and CR1-2 probes obtained from the CR1 cDNA clone,  $\lambda$ T8.3 (Wong, W.W., et al., 1985, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 82:7711). Fifteen positive phage were identified out of  $1.5 \times 10^6$  recombinants and 13 of these represented distinct clones. Ten were restriction mapped and sequenced in whole or in part by the dideoxynucleotide chain termination method. The cDNA clones were aligned on the basis of overlapping sequence identity (Fig. 2) and were found to span 5.5 kb (Fig. 3). A single long open reading frame was identified beginning at the 5' end of the cDNA clones and extending 4.7 kb downstream to a stop codon. The coding sequence for CR1 in this library is expected to be 6 kb, based on an estimated 220,000 dalton molecular weight for the nonglycosylated receptor (Wong, W.W., et al., 1983, J. Clin. Invest. 72:685). Thus, these clones span ~80% of the estimated coding sequence.



-51-

Clones T49.1 and T55.1 contain coding sequence at their 5' ends, indicating that additional 5' coding and noncoding sequences remain to be identified. In the 3' region, the overlapping clones, T8.2, T43.1 and T87.1, contain the transmembrane and cytoplasmic regions encoded by an identical sequence in each clone. The clone extending most 3', T8.2, contains 807 bp of untranslated sequence without a poly(A) sequence. Clone T8.3 contains a 91-bp deletion of nucleotides 1,406-1,497 and clone T40.1 contains a 9-bp deletion of nucleotides 1,498-1,507 relative to the sequences found in clones T6.1 and T55.1. These deletions occurred in regions having sequences homologous to 5' splice sites and may represent splicing errors in the mRNA. Clones T49.1 and T55.1 contain a 110 bp insertion between nucleotides 147 and 148 of the open reading frame (Fig. 3). This sequence is judged to be a portion of an intron because it did not hybridize to blots of tonsillar poly(A)<sup>+</sup> RNA, it contains a 5' splice site (Breathnach, R., et al., 1978, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 75:4853) (Fig. 3), it is flanked by cDNA sequences in CR1 genomic clones, and it shifts the reading frame. Clone T9.4 contains 0.88 kb of intervening sequence at the 3' end that does not hybridize to blots of tonsillar poly(A)<sup>+</sup> RNA.

#### 6.2.2. ANALYSIS OF THE NUCLEOTIDE AND AMINO ACID SEQUENCE OF CR1

Dot matrix analysis of the nucleotide sequence of CR1 (Fig. 3) revealed two types of internal homologies (Fig. 4). The first type of internal homology is represented by the bold, uninterrupted lines that indicate the presence of three tandem, direct, highly homologous repeats of 1.35 kb. These nucleotide sequences encode the long homologous repeats (LHRs) of CR1. The second type of repeat is represented by the dashed parallel lines that indicate

regions of lesser homology. These sequences occur every 190-210 nucleotides and encode the short consensus repeats (SCRs) of CR1.

5 The amino acid sequence deduced from the cDNA sequence is presented in Figure 5 and the three LHRs, designated LHR-B, LHR-C and LHR-D, are aligned to demonstrate their homology. LHR-B extends from residue 1 through residue 438, LHR-C corresponds to residues 439-891, and LHR-D extends from residue 892 through 1,341. Residues 10 451-694 of LHR-C are 99% identical to residues 1-244 of LHR-B, but only 61% identical to the corresponding residues of LHR-D. In contrast, residues 695-891 of LHR-C are 91% identical to residues 1,148-1,341 of LHR-D but only 76% identical to the corresponding region of LHR-B. Thus, LHR-C 15 appears to be a hybrid that comprises sequences most homologous to the first half of LHR-B and the second half of LHR-D. The LHRs are followed by two SCRs that are not repeated, a 25 residue hydrophobic segment and a 43 amino acid COOH-terminal region with no sequence homology to the 20 SCRs (Fig. 5).

The 5' 1.3 kb of the CR1 coding sequence represents a fourth LHR, LHR-A (see Fig. 1, supra, and Section 7, infra). This conclusion was supported by analysis of tryptic peptides of erythrocyte CR1. Ten 25 tryptic peptides have sequences identical to the amino acid sequences derived from the cDNA clones (Table I).

30

35

TABLE I

CR1 TRYPTIC PEPTIDES FOUND IN THE  
DERIVED AMINO ACID SEQUENCE\*

5

Peptide Number	Amino acid sequence	Residue Numbers in the Derived Sequence
10		
66	VDFVCDEGFQLKGS-A	330-345
28	GAASL----QG-WSPEAP	732-749, 1,185-1,202
49	-----IFC-NP-AIL	805-826, 1,258-1,279
15		
35	CQALNKWEPELPSCSR	228-243, 678-693
41c	DKDNFSPGQEVFYSCPEGYDLR	260-281
34b	AV-YTCDPHPDRTGTSFDLIGESTIR	393-417
20		
44d	VCQPPPEILHG	694-704, 1,147-1,157
54d	VFELVGEPsiYCTSNDDQVGIWSGPAPQ	152-179, 602-629
57b	YECRPEYYGRPFS	19-31, 469-481
25		
39b	LIGHSSAECILSGNAA	85-100

\*Tryptic peptides from human erythrocyte CR1 found in the derived amino acid sequence. The number ranges in the right-hand column indicate the location of the peptide in the derived amino acid sequence. Each dash in peptides 66, 28 and 49 indicates multiple residues were identified at that cycle. The dash in peptide 34b indicates no residue was identified at that cycle.

Each LHR comprises seven 60-70 amino acid SCRs that characterize the family of C3 and C4 binding proteins (C4bp) (Fig. 6A). Maximal homology between the 23 SCRs of CR1 was observed by introducing spaces in the alignment of the sequences (Fig. 6A). Altogether, 29 of the average 65 residues in each repeat are conserved. There are six residues that are present in all SCRs: the four half-cystines that are in similar relative positions suggesting that each may be involved in a critical disulfide linkage, and the tryptophan and the second glycine after the second half-cystine (Fig. 6A). Secondary structure analysis of the sequences between the invariant half-cystines using the algorithm of Chou and Fasman (Chou, P.Y. and Fasman, G.D., 1974, *Biochemistry* 13:222) predicted high probability  $\beta$ -turn formation and low probability  $\alpha$ -helix formation. Sequence analysis of two CR1 genomic clones, 2.38 (Fig. 6B) and 2.46, indicates that SCR-14 (Fig. 6A) is encoded by a single exon and that the COOH-terminus of SCR-23 corresponds to the end of an exon. Thus, the SCRs of CR1 may be encoded by separate exons as has been shown for the SCRs of factor B (Campbell, R.D. and Bentley, D.R., 1985, *Immunol. Rev.* 87:19) and of the IL-2-R (Leonard, W.J., et al., 1985, *Science* 230:633).

The consensus sequence of the CR1 SCRs is compared with the SCRs of the other members of the superfamily having this characteristic structure (Fig. 7). These members include not only proteins having C3/C4 binding function, CR2 (Weis, J.J., et al., 1986, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.* 83:5639), C4bp (Chung, L.P., et al., 1985, *Biochem. J.* 230:133), factor H (Kristensen, T., et al., 1986, *J. Immunol.* 136:3407), factor B (Morley, B.J. and Campbell, R.D., 1984, *EMBO J.* 3:153; Mole, J.E., et al., 1984, *J. Biol. Chem.* 259:3407), and C2 (Bentley, D.R. and Porter, R.R., 1984, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.* 81:1212;

Gagnon, J., 1984, Philos. Trans. R. Soc. Lond. B. Biol. Sci. 306:301), but also the proteins not known to have this function, such as the interleukin-2 receptor (Leonard, W.J., et al., 1985, Science 230:633),  $\beta_2$ -glycoprotein I (Lozier, J., et al., 1984, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 81:3640),  
5 C1r (Leytus, S.P., et al., 1986, Biochemistry 25:4855),  
haptoglobin  $\alpha$  chain (Kurosky, A., et al., 1980, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 77:3388), and factor XIIIb (Ichinose, A., et al., 1986, Biochemistry 25:4633). The half-cystine  
10 residues are invariant in the SCRs of all proteins, except  
haptoglobin which lacks the third half-cystine. The  
tryptophan is also invariant with the exception of the fifth  
SCR in  $\beta_2$ -glycoprotein I and two of the repeats in factor  
XIIIb. Other residues that are conserved but not present in  
15 each SCR tend to cluster about the half-cystines. There is  
only one free thiol group in factor B and C2 (Christie, D.L.  
and Gagnon, J., 1982, Biochem. J. 201:555; Parkes, C., et  
al., 1983, Biochem. J. 213:201), and in the SCRs of  $\beta_2$ -  
glycoprotein I, the first half-cystine is disulfide-linked  
20 to the third and the second to the fourth (Lozier, J., et  
al., 1984, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 81:3640).

In the derived amino acid sequence of CR1, there are 17 potential sites for N-linked oligosaccharides and all of them are in the extracellular region (Fig. 6A).  
25 Molecular weight differences between CR1 synthesized in the  
presence and absence of tunicamycin (Lublin, D.M., et al., 1986, J. Biol. Chem. 261:5736) and analysis of glucosamine  
content (Sim, R.B., 1985, Biochem. J. 232:883) suggest the  
presence of only 6-8 N-linked complex oligosaccharides,  
30 indicating that all potential sites are not used. For  
example, the asparagine at residue 263 of the derived amino  
acid sequence (Fig. 5) was identified in peptide 41c (Table  
I), indicating absence of glycosylation at this site. In

contrast, the unidentified amino acid in peptide 34b probably corresponds to a glycosylated asparagine at residue 395.

5 The only nonrepetitive CR1 sequences identified in the 5.5 kb of cDNA are located in the COOH-terminal region. A secondary structure analysis of this region identifies a single 25-residue putative membrane-spanning segment having strong hydrophobic character and high potential for  $\alpha$ -helix formation (Fig. 5). This sequence is immediately followed by four positively charged residues, a characteristic of many membrane proteins. The presumed cytoplasmic region of CR1 comprises 43 residues and contains a six amino acid sequence, VHPRTL, which is homologous to the sequence VRKRTL, a site of protein kinase C phosphorylation in the epidermal growth factor (EGF) receptor and the erbB oncogene product (Hunter, T., et al., 1984, Nature 311:480; Davis, R.J. and Czech, M.P., 1985, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 82:1974). There are no tyrosine residues in the cytoplasmic region of tonsillar CR1.

### 6.3. DISCUSSION

Approximately 80% of the primary structure of the F allotype of CR1 has been obtained by sequencing overlapping cDNA clones. The most unusual structural feature of CR1 observed in this analysis is the presence of tandem, direct LHRs of 450 amino acids, four of which are predicted to occur in the F allotype of CR1 that has an estimated polypeptide chain length of 2,000 residues (Wong, W.W., et al., 1983, J. Clin. Invest. 72:685; Sim, R.B., 1985, Biochem. J. 232:883). Three of the LHRs have been cloned and sequenced while evidence for the existence of the fourth was provided by the analysis of tryptic peptides. Each LHR is comprised of seven SCRs which are the basic structural elements of other C3/C4 binding proteins. The

conservation of the four half-cystines per SCR, the probable involvement of the first and third and the second and fourth half-cystines in disulfide linkages (Lozier, J., et al., 1984, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 81:3640) and the presence of conserved amino acids such as proline, glycine and asparagine which are frequently found in  $\beta$ -turns (Rose, G.D., et al., 1985, Adv. Protein Chem. 37:1) lead to the proposal that an SCR forms a triple loop structure maintained by disulfide linkages (Fig. 8). This role for the half-cystine residues is supported by the finding that mildly trypsin-treated CR1 (Sim, R.B., 1985, Biochem. J. 232:883) and factor H (Sim, R.B. and DiScipio, R.G., 1982, Biochem. J. 205:285) migrate as intact molecules when analyzed by SDS-polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis (PAGE) under non-reducing conditions and as multiple tryptic fragments after reduction.

This series of tandemly repeated SCRs is predicted to form an elongated structure (Fig. 8) as has been proposed for factor H and for each subunit of human C4bp (Sim, R.B. and DiScipio, R.G., 1982, Biochem. J. 205:285; Whaley, K. and Ruddy, S., 1976, J. Exp. Med. 144:1147; Dahlback, B., et al., 1983, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 80:3461). Electron microscopic studies of the subunits of C4bp have indicated dimensions of 300 x 30 Angstroms (Dahlback, B., et al., 1983, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 80:3461). As each subunit is composed of eight SCRs (Chung, L.P., et al., 1985, Biochem. J. 230:133), an individual SCR is calculated to be 38 x 30 Angstroms. Assuming that the SCRs of CR1 have similar dimensions and that the F allotype has 30 SCRs, the receptor could extend as much as 1,140 Angstroms from the cell membrane. Consistent with this prediction of CR1 structure is the earlier finding that ferritin-labeled antibody bound to CR1 on neutrophils was frequently 500 Angstroms from the outer leaflet of the plasma membrane (Abrahamson, D.R. and Fearon,

D.T., 1983, Lab. Invest. 48:162). Such an elongated structure of CR1 would facilitate the interaction of receptor-bearing cells with C3b that has covalently bound to relatively inaccessible sites within immune complexes and microbial cell surfaces.

5           The finding that the SCR is the major, and perhaps only, extracytoplasmic element of CR1 provides structural evidence for a close relationship between the receptor and factor H and C4bp, two plasma proteins that are  
10 exclusively or predominantly composed of SCRs (Chung, L.P., et al., 1985, Biochem. J. 230:133; Kristensen, T., et al., 1986, J. Immunol. 136:3407). CR1 was initially isolated as an erythrocyte membrane protein having factor H-like  
15 activity after detergent solubilization (Fearon, D.T., 1979, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 76:5867), and it was found subsequently to have the regulatory functions of factor H and C4bp when residing on the plasma membrane (Iida, K. and Nussenzweig, V., 1981, J. Exp. Med. 153:1138). By analysis  
20 of the inheritance of structural polymorphisms of CR1, factor H, and C4bp, the genes encoding these three proteins were shown to be linked (de Cordoba, R., et al., 1985, J. Exp. Med. 161:1189), and the locus for this linkage group and for the structurally related receptor, CR2, have been  
25 shown recently by in situ hybridization and by the analysis of somatic cell hybrids to be on the long arm of chromosome 1, band q32 (Weis, J.H., et al., 1987, J. Immunol. 138:312). Before the present study, the only evidence for a structural relationship between these proteins was a significant  
30 similarity in their amino acid compositions (Wong, W.W., et al., 1985, J. Immunol. Methods 82:303). Therefore, the present finding of at least 23 SCRs in CR1 constitutes the direct and formal demonstration of a structural relationship of the receptor with factor H and C4bp (Chung, L.P., et al., 1985, Biochem. J. 230:133; Kristensen, T., et al., 1986, J.  
35 Immunol. 136:3407), proteins with similar functions, and



with the Ba and C2b fragments of factor B and C2 (Morley, B.J. and Campbell, R.D., 1984, EMBO J. 3:153; Mole, J.E., et al., 1984, J. Biol. Chem. 259:3407; Bentley, D.R. and Porter, R.R., 1984, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 81:1212; Gagnon, J., 1984, Philos. Trans. R. Soc. Lond. B Biol. Sci. 306:301), components that form enzymatic complexes with C3b and C4b, respectively. However, the SCR is also found in several noncomplement proteins (Campbell, R.D., and Bentley, D.R., 1985, Immunol. Rev. 87:19; Lozier, J., et al., 1984, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 81:3640; Leytus, S.P., et al., 1986, Biochemistry 25:4855; Kurosky, A., et al., 1980, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 77:3388; Ichinose, A., et al., 1986, Biochemistry 25:4633) (Fig. 7), indicating that it does not necessarily represent a C3/C4 binding structure.

Among the proteins having SCRs, CR1 is unique in having organized this basic structure and genetic unit into the higher order structural unit of the LHR. Analysis of a 14.5 kb BamHI fragment of genomic DNA that is associated with expression of the S allotype has suggested that at least one repeating genomic unit in CR1 is an extended segment of DNA containing the exons encoding at least five SCRs and their flanking introns (Wong, W.W., et al., 1986, J. Exp. Med. 164:1531). These studies have also suggested that the S allele contains an additional copy of this genomic unit compared with the number present in the F allele. This observation, combined with a tryptic peptide mapping study (Nickells, M.W., et al., 1986, Mol. Immunol. 23:661) and the present finding that an LHR represents a peptide of ~40-50 kD allows us to predict the presence in the S allotype (290 kD) of an additional LHR relative to the estimate of four LHRs in the F allotype (250,000 daltons molecular weight).

In addition to providing evidence for duplication events, the sequences of the LHRs also suggest that conversion events have occurred within the CR1 gene. LHR-B

and -D are 67% identical to each other throughout their length, whereas LHR-C is 99% identical to LHR-B in the NH<sub>2</sub>-terminal four SCRs and 91% identical to LHR-D in the COOH-terminal three SCRs. This organization could not have occurred by a single recombinational event between identical parental alleles in the origin of this hybrid LHR. Rather, the hybrid LHR may have arisen by gene conversion (Atchison, M. and Adesnik, M., 1986, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 83:2300) in which sequences in an LHR-C precursor were replaced by sequences present in LHR-B or LHR-D. The near complete identity and precise alignment of homologous sequences in these LHRs (Fig. 5) also may have been maintained by a mechanism involving gene conversion. Analysis of the extent of homology between intervening sequences of those segments of the CR1 gene encoding the LHRs should determine whether gene conversion or selection based on functional constraints have strictly limited sequence divergence.

Although a previous study suggested that CR1 is monovalent (Wilson, J.G., et al., 1982, N. Engl. J. Med. 307:981), each LHR might represent a single C3b/C4b binding domain, which would make the receptor multivalent and adapted for the binding of complexes bearing multiple molecules of C3b and C4b. Alternatively, distinct LHRs might be responsible for binding C3b and C4b, respectively (see Section 9, *infra*), providing a structural basis for the combination of factor H and C4bp activities in CR1. Finally the LHRs of CR1 may represent structural domains that serve to extend CR1 from the plasma membrane, as suggested by the proposed structural model (Fig. 8), and SCRs at the NH<sub>2</sub>-terminal region bind C3b and C4b, as has been found for factor H (Sim, R.B. and DiScipio, R.G., 1982, Biochem. J. 205:285; Alsenz, J., et al., 1984, Biochem. J. 224:389).

-61-

Activation of protein kinase C by phorbol esters induces phosphorylation of CR1 in neutrophils, monocytes, and eosinophils (Changelian, P.S. and Fearon, D.T., 1986, J. Exp. Med. 163:101) and the CR1 cytoplasmic domain of 43 amino acids has a sequence that is homologous to a site that is phosphorylated by protein kinase C in the epidermal growth factor receptor (Hunger, T., et al., 1984, Nature 311:480; Davis, R.J. and Czech, M.P., 1985, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 82:1974). However, this cytoplasmic sequence, which was found in three independent clones of the tonsillar library, is most likely that of B cell CR1, which is not phosphorylated after activation of protein-kinase C (Changelian, P.S. and Fearon, D.T., 1986, J. Exp. Med. 163:101).

15 7. EXAMPLE: CR1 5' cDNA SEQUENCES CONTAIN  
A FOURTH LONG HOMOLOGOUS REPEAT

Analysis of a partial cDNA sequence of CR1 revealed a structure in which three LHRs, LHR-B, LHR-C, LHR-D, of 450 amino acids were each comprised of seven short consensus repeats (SCR) of 65 amino acids characteristic of C3/C4 binding proteins (see Section 6, supra). In the examples described herein, we describe the cloning and nucleotide sequence of a fourth amino-terminal LHR, LHR-A (Klickstein, L.B., et al., 1987, Complement 4:180) by the sequencing of 5' cDNA clones. Analysis of LHR-A revealed that it is 99% homologous to LHR-B in the five 3' SCRs, but only 61% homologous in the two 5' SCRs.

30 7.1. MATERIALS AND METHODS

7.1.1. CONSTRUCTION OF A cDNA LIBRARY

A selectively primed cDNA library,  $\lambda$ HH, was constructed from 3  $\mu$ g of poly (A)<sup>+</sup> RNA purified from DMSO-induced cells as described (Chirgwin, J.M. et al., 1979,

35

Biochemistry 18:5290; Aviv, H. and Leder, P., 1972, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 69:1408; Ausubel, F.M., et al., 1987, Current Protocols in Molecular Biology, John Wiley & Sons, New York) with the following modifications. LK35.1, a 35-mer oligonucleotide, 5'-TGAAGTCATC ACAGGATTC ACTTCACATG TGGGG-3', was used in place of oligo(dT)<sub>12-18</sub> and 40  $\mu$ Ci of  $\alpha$ <sup>32</sup>P-dCTP were added during second strand synthesis. One third of the cDNA was cloned in  $\lambda$ gt11 and a cDNA library was constructed from human tonsillar poly(A)<sup>+</sup> RNA as described in Section 6.1.2, supra. 750,000 independent recombinants were obtained.

#### 7.1.2. ISOLATION OF CLONES, PROBES, AND DNA SEQUENCE ANALYSIS

The probes used for screening cDNA libraries were CR1-1 (Wong, W.W., et al., 1985, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 82:7711) (ATCC accession no. 57331), CR-2 (Wong, W.W., et al., supra), CR1-4 (Wong, W.W. et al., 1986, J. Exp. Med. 164:1531), and CR1-18, a 252 bp Sau3AI fragment from the 0.5 kb EcoRI fragment of cDNA clone  $\lambda$ H3.1 corresponding to nucleotides 101-352 in Figure 1. Under conditions of high stringency, CR1-18 hybridizes only to cDNA clones encoding either the NH<sub>2</sub>-terminal SCR of LHR-A or the signal peptide. The inserts of the cDNA clones were sequenced by the dideoxynucleotide technique (Sanger, F., et al., 1977, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 74:5463) after subcloning fragments into M13mp18 and M13mp19 (Yanisch-Perron, C. et al., 1985, Gene 28:351).

#### 7.2. RESULTS

A specifically primed  $\lambda$ gt11 cDNA library,  $\lambda$ HH, that contained  $7.5 \times 10^5$  recombinants was prepared with cDNA synthesized from poly (A)<sup>+</sup> RNA from DMSO induced HL-60 cells. These cells express only the F allotype of CR1 (Lublin, D.M., et al., 1986, J. Biol. Chem. 261:5736) which

is predicted to have four LHRs (Lapata, M.A., et al., 1984, Nucl. Acids Res. 12:5707). The primer, LK35.1, was an antisense 35-mer corresponding to nucleotides 896-930 of the partial cDNA sequence of CR1 presented in Figure 3. This oligonucleotide was shown to hybridize to LHR-B, LHR-C and LHR-D under the conditions of reverse transcription. Two hundred and fifty positive clones were identified in a plating of  $3.8 \times 10^5$  unamplified recombinant phage screened with a mixture of the CR1 cDNA probes, CR1-1 and CR1-4. Thirty-eight positive clones were picked and plaque purified. Southern blots of EcoRI-digested DNA from these clones were screened with the 23-mer oligonucleotide, KS23.1, 5'-CTGAGCGTAC CCAAAGGGAC AAG-3', corresponding to nucleotides 763-785 of the partial CR1 cDNA sequence of Figure 3. This probe hybridizes under conditions of high stringency at a single site in the sequence encoding LHR-B but not to sequences encoding LHR-C or LHR-D. The insert of clone  $\lambda$ H7.1 (Fig. 9) contained three EcoRI fragments of 1.0 kb, 0.9 kb and 0.4 kb and the two larger fragments hybridized to KS23.1, indicating that this clone contained sequences coding for the 3' 5/7 of LHR-A and all of LHR-B. This finding confirmed that LHR-A is highly homologous to LHR-B. Clone  $\lambda$ H3.1 (Fig. 9) contained a single KS23.1-positive EcoRI fragment of 1.0 kb and a 5', 0.5 kb fragment that hybridized weakly with CR1-4 at high stringency. This clone was considered to contain the additional 5' sequence completing LHR-A, including SCRs -1 and -2 and 0.1 kb of upstream sequence. None of the remaining 36 clones, all of which hybridized with CR1-1, were detected with the probe, CR1-18, a 252 bp Sau3AI fragment from the 0.5 kb EcoRI fragment of clone  $\lambda$ H3.1 that does not hybridize to sequences encoding LHR-B, -C or -D.

DNA sequence analysis of  $\lambda$ H3.1 revealed that the open reading frame continued to the 5' end of the cDNA, indicating that the clone did not extend to the

translational start site. Therefore, the cDNA libraries,  $\lambda$ HH and  $\lambda$ S2T, were rescreened with the probe CR1-18 to identify one clone from each,  $\lambda$ H10.3 and  $\lambda$ T109.1, respectively. The EcoRI fragments of these clones that hybridized with CR1-18 were sequenced as were the inserts from the clones,  $\lambda$ H3.1 and  $\lambda$ H7.1. The composite sequence is presented in Figure 1 such that the nucleotide following number 1531 in Figure 1 is nucleotide #1 in Figure 3. The overlapping sequences of the cDNA clones from the HL-60 and tonsillar libraries are identical.

Immediately upstream of LHR-A, clones  $\lambda$ H10.3 and  $\lambda$ T109.1 contain identical putative hydrophobic leader sequences (Von Heijne, G., 1986, Nucl. Acids Res. 14:4683) encoding 41 amino acids, including an ATG matching the consensus NNA/GNNATGG proposed for eukaryotic translation initiation sites (Fig. 10) (Kozak, M., 1986, Cell 44:283). A second ATG, located six codons upstream of the chosen ATG and just downstream of an in-frame stop codon, is a poor match for this consensus sequence. The first three amino acids of this leader sequence for CR1, MGA, are the same as those reported for CR2. The sequences of these two clones diverge upstream of the ATG and that from clone  $\lambda$ 10.3 is believed to represent a portion of an intervening sequence, as has been described for other CR1 cDNA clones in Section 6, supra.

The signal peptidase cleavage is predicted (Von Heijne, G., 1986, Nucl. Acids Res. 14:4683) to occur between glycine-46 and glutamine-47, suggesting that the blocked  $\text{NH}_2$ -terminus of CR1 (Wong., W.W., et al., 1985, J. Immunol. Methods 82:303; Holeis, V.M., et al., 1986, Complement 3:63) may be due to the presence of a pyrrolidone amide. The first two SCRs of the  $\text{NH}_2$ -terminal LHR-A contained in these clones are only 61% identical to the corresponding region of LHR-B, whereas SCRs 3-7 of LHR-A are 99% identical to the corresponding SCRs of LHR-B (Fig. 10). Comparison of LHR-A

with LHR-C reveals that only the third and fourth SCRs of each are highly homologous (99% identical). LHR-A and -D have only 68% overall identity, with maximal identity of 81% between the sixth SCR of each LHR. Thus, completion of the 5' cDNA sequence of CR1 indicates that the F allotype is comprised of 2039 amino acids including a 41 amino acid signal peptide, four LHRs of seven SCRs each, two additional COOH-terminal SCRs, a 25 residue transmembrane region and a 43 amino acid cytoplasmic domain. There are 25 potential N-linked glycosylation sites.

### 7.3. DISCUSSION

The primary structure of the NH<sub>2</sub>-terminus and the signal peptide of the F allotype of CR1 has been deduced by the isolation and sequencing of 5' cDNA clones. The highly repetitive nature of the CR1 sequence made critical the development of an appropriate strategy for the preparation and identification of cDNA clones encoding this region of the receptor. A cDNA library was prepared using as a primer a 35-mer oligonucleotide known to hybridize under the conditions of reverse transcription to LHR-B, -C and -D; the possibility was considered that this primer might hybridize also to LHR-A that had been predicted to be highly homologous to LHR-B (see Section 6 supra). Appropriate cDNA clones were identified by the use of another oligonucleotide, KS23.1, that hybridizes only to LHR-B under stringent conditions, thereby increasing the probability of finding 5' cDNA clones. Two clones were found that encompassed almost all of the residual sequence of CR1, and a Sau3AI fragment of one of these, CR1-18, had sequence sufficiently unique to permit its use in the identification of the remaining 5' clones (Figs. 9, 10).

A 250 bp probe from the 5' region of LHR-A, CR1-18, hybridized not only to CR1 transcripts of 7.9 and 9.2 kb, but also to a 2 kb transcript in human tonsillar RNA

under stringent conditions. This cross-hybridizing mRNA was not observed with CR1 cDNA probes from other LHRs or in northern blots of RNA from dimethyl sulfoxide-induced HL-60 cells and HSB-2 T lymphoblastoid cells. Thus, CR1 contains sequences homologous to two additional B cell proteins, one  
5 that is encoded by this newly recognized mRNA, and CR2.

#### 8. EXAMPLE: EXPRESSION OF RECOMBINANT HUMAN CR1

As described supra, human CR1 cDNA clones have been isolated that span 7.0 kb and contain an open reading  
10 frame encoding 2039 amino acids (Fig. 1). The proposed precursor form of the receptor includes a 41 amino acid signal peptide, four long homologous repeats (LHRs) of 450 amino acids with each LHR comprised of 7 short consensus  
15 repeats (SCRs), two COOH-terminal SCRs of 65 amino acids, a 25 amino acid transmembrane domain, and a 43 amino acid cytoplasmic region. Thus, the CR1 F allotype contains 30 SCRs. The NH<sub>2</sub>-terminal LHR, LHR-A (see Section 7, supra), is 61% identical to the corresponding region of LHR-B in the first two SCRs and 99% identical in the COOH-terminal five  
20 SCRs. Restriction fragments of eight CR1 cDNA clones were spliced to form a full length construct of 6.9 kb and placed downstream of a mouse metallothionein promoter or a cytomegalovirus promoter, and transfected into L (mouse) cells or COS (monkey) cells. Recombinant cell surface CR1  
25 was detected by indirect radioimmunoassay and immunofluorescence. No antigen was detected on cells transfected with the parental vector (CR1<sup>-</sup>) only. Immunoprecipitation of transfected, surface <sup>125</sup>I-labeled, COS (monkey) cells by anti-CR1 monoclonal antibody, and  
30 analysis by non-reducing sodium dodecyl sulfate (SDS) polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis, yielded a 190,000 daltons molecular weight band which co-migrated with the F allotype from human erythrocytes. The expression of  
35 recombinant CR1 antigen of the correct molecular weight



(Klickstein, L.B., et al., 1988, FASEB J. 2:A1833) provides evidence that the cDNA contains the entire coding sequence of human CR1.

5                   8.1. CONSTRUCTION OF PLASMID pBSABCD,  
                    CONTAINING THE ENTIRE CR1 CODING SEQUENCE

We describe herein the construction of plasmid pBSABCD, a vector encoding the full length (SCRs 1-30) CR1 protein.

10                   The 2.3 kb insert from cDNA clone  $\lambda$ T8.2 (Klickstein, L.B., et al., 1987, J. Exp. Med. 165:1095; see Section 6, supra) was subcloned into pUC18 as an EcoRI fragment, such that the 5' end was proximal to the HindIII site in the plasmid polylinker. This plasmid was named p188.2. p188.2 was cut with ApaI and HindIII, and the large  
15                   4.7 kb fragment containing CR1 sequence from SCR 26 through the 3' untranslated region plus vector sequences was gel-purified.

                    The insert from cDNA clone  $\lambda$ T50.1 (Klickstein, L.B., et al., 1987, J. Exp. Med. 165:1095; see Section 6, supra) was subcloned as an EcoRI fragment into M13mp18.  
20                   This phage was called 18R50.1. DNA from the replicative form of this clone was cut with HindIII and ApaI, and the 1.45 kb fragment containing CR1 SCRs 18-25 was isolated, ligated to the 4.7 kb fragment from p188.2, and the ligation  
25                   transformed into E. coli DH5 $\alpha$ . This plasmid was called p8.250.1.

                    The 0.75 kb and the 0.93 kb EcoRI fragments from cDNA clone  $\lambda$ T8.3 (Wong, W.W., et al., 1985, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A 22:7711) were subcloned into plasmid  
30                   pBR327. These subclones were called pCR1-1 and pCR1-2, respectively, and contained SCRs 11-14 and SCRs 17-21, respectively. The EcoRI inserts were purified from each. The 0.75 kb pCR1-1 fragment was digested with SmaI, and the digest was ligated to pUC18 DNA cut with EcoRI and SmaI. A  
35

-68-

subclone, p181-1.1, with a 0.5 kb insert corresponding to SCRs 12-14, was isolated. The 0.93 kb fragment of pCR1-2 was digested with HindIII, and ligated to pUC19 cut with EcoRI and HindIII, and a subclone, p191-2.1, was isolated that contained a 0.27 kb insert containing SCR 17.

5 The cDNA clone  $\lambda$ T6.1 (See Section 6, supra; Klickstein, L.B., et al., 1987, J. Exp. Med. 165:1095; Wong, W.W., et al., 1987, J. Exp. Med. 164:1531) was digested with EcoRI, and the 0.37 kb fragment corresponding to CR1 SCRs 15 and 16 was subcloned into pBR322. This clone was called  
10 pCR1-4. Clone p181-1.1 was cut with EcoRI and ScaI, and the 1.4 kb fragment was isolated. Clone p191-2.1 (Klickstein, L.B., et al., 1987, J. Exp. Med. 165:1095; see Section 6, supra) was digested with EcoRI and ScaI and the 2.0 kb  
15 fragment was isolated, ligated to the 1.4 kb fragment from p181-1.1, and the mixture was transformed into E. coli DH5 $\alpha$ . The resulting plasmid was called p1-11-2. Plasmid p1-11-2 was digested with EcoRI, and the 0.37 kb insert fragment from pCR1-4 was inserted by ligation. The resulting plasmid  
20 was used to transform E. coli DH5 $\alpha$ .

A subclone was chosen that contained a 0.39 kb BamHI-HindIII fragment. This plasmid was called p142 and contained CR1 SCRs 12-17. The 3.5 kb EcoRI-HindIII insert fragment from p8.250.1 was transferred to pGEM3b. This  
25 plasmid was called pG8.250.1. The 1.2 HindIII fragment from p142 was purified and ligated to pG8.250.1 that had been cut with HindIII. A subclone was chosen that contained a 2.4 kb PstI-ApaI insert, thus selecting the correct orientation. This plasmid was called pCD and contained CR1 sequences from  
30 SCR 12 through the 3' end.

The cDNA clone  $\lambda$ 5'7.1 (Klickstein, L.B., et al., Sept. 1987, Complement 4:180; see Section 7, supra) was cut with PstI, and the 1.35 kb fragment corresponding to SCRs 6-12 was isolated and ligated to PstI-cut pCD. The mixture  
35

was transformed, and a subclone was selected which contained 1.35 kb and 1.1 kb HindIII fragments. This clone was called pBCD.

5 The cDNA clone  $\lambda$ 5'3.1 (Klickstein, L.B., et al., 1987, Complement 4:180; see Section 7, supra) was cut with EcoRI, and the digest was ligated to EcoRI-cut pUC18. A subclone, p3.11-1, was isolated, that contained a 1.0 kb insert corresponding to SCRs 3-7, which insert was gel-purified. The cDNA clone  $\lambda$ 5'10.3 (Klickstein, L.B., et al., 10 1987, Complement 4:180; see Section 7, supra) was cut with EcoRI, and the 0.63 kb insert containing SCRs 1 and 2 was subcloned into pUC18. This clone was called p10.3.5. Plasmid p10.3.5 was partially digested with EcoRI, and a 3.4 kb fragment corresponding to linear plasmid was isolated and ligated with the 1 kb fragment from p3.11-1. A subclone, 15 pLA, was picked, which contained a 1.3 kb PstI fragment, in the correct site of insertion and orientation.

The cDNA clone  $\lambda$ T109.4 (Klickstein, L.B., et al., 1987, Complement 4:180; see Section 7, supra) was digested 20 with EcoRI, and subcloned into pUC18. A subclone was chosen that contained a 0.55 kb EcoRI fragment corresponding to the 5' untranslated region through the leader sequence and SCRs 1 and 2. The plasmid p109.4 was cut with PstI and BspMII, and a 3.0 kb fragment containing the vector, leader 25 sequence, and SCR 1, was isolated. The fragment was ligated to a 0.81 kb PstI-BspMII fragment from pLA that contained SCRs 2-5. This new plasmid was called pNLA. The plasmid pNLA was partially digested with EcoRI and completely digested with PstI, and a 1.1 kb EcoRI-PstI fragment 30 containing CR1 sequence from the leader sequence through SCR 5 was isolated and ligated to pBluescript KS+ (Stratagene, San Diego, CA) to put an XhoI site on the 5' side of the cDNA. This plasmid was called pXLA.

-70-

The plasmid pBCD was cut with EcoRV and then partially digested with PstI, and a 6.0 kb PstI-EcoRV fragment containing CR1 sequence from SCR 6 through the 3' untranslated region was isolated and ligated to PstI + SmaI-digested pXLA. The resulting bacterial expression plasmid, which contains the entire CR1 cDNA coding sequence, was called pBSABCD.

8.2. CONSTRUCTION AND ASSAY OF PLASMID piABCD,  
A MAMMALIAN EXPRESSION VECTOR CONTAINING  
THE ENTIRE CR1 CODING SEQUENCE

The pBSABCD plasmid was digested with XhoI and NotI, and the insert was ligated downstream from the CMV promoter in the 4.4 kb fragment of the expression vector, CDM8 (Seed, B., 1987, Nature 329:840-842), which also had been cut with these restriction enzymes. The resulting construction was termed piABCD (Fig. 11). Alternatively, the 6.9 kb XhoI-NotI fragment was ligated downstream from the metallothionein promoter in the expression vector, pMT.neol, which had also been cut with these restriction enzymes. The resulting construction was termed pMTABCD (Fig. 11).

Sheep erythrocytes sensitized with rabbit antibody (EA) and limited amounts of C4b [EAC4b(lim)] and 12,000 cpm  $^{125}\text{I}$ -C3b per cell [EAC4b(lim),3b] were prepared by sequential treatment of EAC4b(lim) (Diamedix) with C1, C2 and  $^{125}\text{I}$ -C3 followed by incubation for 60 minutes at 37°C in gelatin veronal-buffered saline containing 40 mM EDTA. Alternatively, methylamine-treated C3 [C3(ma)] were covalently attached to sheep E (erythrocytes) treated with 3-(2-pyridyldithio) propionic acid N-hydroxysuccinimide ester (Sigma) (Lambris, J.D., et al., 1983, J. Immunol. Methods 65:277). EAC4b were prepared with purified C4 (Hammer, C.H., et al., 1981, J. Biol. Chem. 256:3995).

Both piABCD and pMTABCD were transfected by the DEAE (diethylaminoethyl)-dextran method into COS (monkey) cells. Recombinant CR1 was detected on the surface of the transfected cells by immunofluorescence using the anti-CR1 monoclonal antibody, YZ-1; and by immunoprecipitation of <sup>125</sup>I-labeled cells followed by non-reducing SDS-PAGE, which revealed a protein having a mobility identical to that of CR1 immunoprecipitated from human erythrocytes of a donor homozygous for the F allotype (Wong, W.W., et al., 1983, J. Clin. Invest. 72:685); and by formation of rosettes with sheep erythrocytes coated with C3b (Fearon, D.T., 1980, J. Exp. Med. 152:20). The identical electrophoretic mobilities of the native and recombinant CR1 proteins confirmed that the CR1 F allotype contains SCRs 1-30.

In addition, murine L cells were co-transfected by the DEAE-dextran method (Ausubel, F.M., et al., 1987, Current Protocols in Molecular Biology, Seidman, J.G. and Struhl, K., eds., John Wiley & Sons, New York; Seed, B., 1987, Nature 329:840) in duplicate with 0, 2, or 4 µg of either piABCD or pMTABCD and 2 µg of pXGH5, a reporter plasmid that directs the expression of growth hormone (Selden, R.F., et al., 1986, Mol. Cell. Biol. 6:3173). The cells were harvested after two days and assayed for expression of CR1 by binding of YZ1 monoclonal anti-CR1 antibody. There was a dose response relationship between recombinant plasmid DNA and the expression of CR1 antigen (Table II).

30

35

TABLE II

DOSE RESPONSE OF RECOMBINANT CR1 AND  
HUMAN GROWTH HORMONE IN CO-TRANSFECTED L CELLS

Plate Number	pXGH5 ( $\mu$ g)	pMTABCD ( $\mu$ g)	pIABCD ( $\mu$ g)	YZ1 Anti- CR1 mAB RIA*	Growth Hormone (ng/ml)
				(cpm)	
1	2	0	0	1444	120
2	2	0	2	6058	130
3	2	0	2	6531	140
4	2	0	4	10620	180
5	2	0	4	9898	80
6	2	2	0	3111	180
7	2	2	0	2747	160
8	2	4	0	3547	160
9	2	4	0	3337	140

\*For radioimmunoassay (RIA), replicate samples of  $3 \times 10^5$  transfected cells in 0.1 ml phosphate-buffered saline containing 1% bovine serum albumin and 0.02% sodium azide were incubated at 0°C for 60 minutes with 3  $\mu$ g/ml YZ-1 IgG1 anti-CR1 (Changelian, P.S., et al., 1985, J. Immunol. 134:1851). The cells were washed and resuspended in 0.1 ml of buffer containing 1-2  $\mu$ Ci/ml of  $^{125}$ I-F(ab')<sub>2</sub> goat-anti-mouse IgG or  $^{125}$ I-protein A. After 1-2 hours at 0°C, the cells were washed and assayed for  $^{125}$ I.

The plasmid, pIABCD, directed the expression of nearly three-fold more CR1 antigen than did pMTABCD. The growth hormone concentration in the culture medium varied by less than two-fold with the exception of plate 5. Additional experiments revealed that pIABCD directed the transient expression of three-fold more CR1 antigen in COS cells than in L cells.

CR1 antigen was present in clusters on the surface of the transfected COS cells when assessed by indirect immunofluorescence of cells stained with YZ1 anti-CR1 mAB (Fig. 12). This distribution of recombinant CR1 on COS cells resembles that of wild type CR1 on human leukocytes (Fearon et al., 1981, J. Exp. Med. 153:1615).

-73-

5 The molecular weight of the recombinant CR1 was determined by surface iodination of COS cells transfected with piABCD, immunoprecipitation of cell lysates with Sepharose-YZ1, SDS-PAGE and autoradiography. The recombinant CR1 had a molecular weight of 190,000 unreduced which is equivalent to that of the F allotype and less than that of the S allotype of erythrocyte CR1 (Fig. 14).

10 The C3b-binding and C4b-binding function of recombinant CR1 was assayed by the formation of rosettes between the transfected COS cells and EAC4b or EAC4b(lim),3b. In 31 separate transfections, 5%-50% of COS cells transfected with the plasmid, piABCD, bound five or more EAC4b or EAC4b(lim),3b (Fig. 13). The COS cells expressing CR1 did not form rosettes with EAC4b(lim),3bi, although this intermediate did form rosettes with Raji B lymphoblastoid cells expressing CR2.

### 8.3. EXPRESSION OF CR1 FRAGMENTS

20 Expression vectors encoding part of the CR1 coding sequence (deletion mutants) were constructed as described infra, and found to express their respective CR1 inserts when transformed into COS cells. The CR1 fragments were expressed as cell-surface proteins.

#### 25 8.3.1. CONSTRUCTION OF DELETION MUTANTS piBCD, piABD, piACD, piAD, piBD, piCD and piD

30 The construction of these deletion mutants was performed by taking advantage of the presence of a single BsmI site in a homologous position near the amino-terminus of each of the four CR1 long homologous repeats (LHRs), and the absence of BsmI sites elsewhere in the CR1 cDNA and Bluescript vector (Stratagene, San Diego, CA).

35 Ten micrograms of the plasmid pBSABCD were partially digested with 50 units of the restriction enzyme BsmI for 45 minutes, and the digest was fractionated by

-74-

agarose gel electrophoresis. DNA fragments of 8.55 kb, 7.20 kb and 5.85 kb were purified that corresponded to linear segments of the parent plasmid that lacked one, two or three LHRs, respectively. Each of the three fragments was ligated to itself and the ligations used separately to transform competent E. coli DH5 $\alpha$  to ampicillin resistance.

The 8.55 kb fragment was generated as the consequence of cleavage of pBSABCD at two adjacent BsmI sites, thus there are three possible product plasmids after ligation, pBCD, pACD or pABD, where the capital letters represent the LHRs that remain in the plasmid. These were distinguishable by restriction mapping with SmaI. DNA was prepared from 12 colonies, digested with SmaI, and separated by agarose gel electrophoresis. Five clones had two SmaI fragments of 2.5 kb and 6.1 kb, corresponding to deletion of the coding sequence of LHR-A, thus representing pBCD. Three clones had a single linear fragment of 8.5 kb corresponding to pACD. Four clones had two SmaI fragments of 1.2 kb and 7.4 kb, which was expected for the deletion of the coding sequence of LHR-C, producing pABD. The 5.6 kb insert of each of these three constructions was gel-purified after double digestion with XhoI and NotI, and ligated to the expression vector CDM8 that had been gel-purified after digestion with the same restriction enzymes. E. coli DK1/P3 was transformed with the ligation mixtures and DNA was prepared from five colonies of each. The presence of the deleted CR1 cDNA insert in the expression vector was shown in each case by SacI digestion, which revealed the expected two fragments of 4.20 kb and 5.75 kb. These plasmids were called piBCD, piACD and piABD.

The 7.20 kb fragment from the partial digestion of pBSABCD was a consequence of BsmI digestion at three adjacent sites or, equivalently with respect to the large fragment, at two sites with a single uncut site between them, thus there were two possible products obtainable after



transformation, pAD and pCD. These were distinguished by double digestion with XhoI and PstI, which yielded two fragments of 1.0 kb and 6.2 kb in the case of pAD, and a linear fragment of 7.2 kb for pCD. The 4.2 kb insert from each of these plasmids was gel-purified after double digestion with XhoI and NotI, and subcloned into CDM8 as above. The presence of the deleted CR1 cDNA in the expression vector was shown by double digestion with PstI and BglIII. The clone piAD had fragments of 2.4 kb and 6.2 kb, while piCD had a single fragment of 8.6 kb.

The 5.85 kb fragment from the BsmI digestion of pBSABCD represents a product of complete digestion and a single clone, pD, was obtained after transformation of E. coli DH5 $\alpha$ . This was confirmed by double digestion with HindIII and BglIII which yielded the expected 3.7 kb and 2.2 kb fragments. The 2.9 kb insert of the clone was gel-purified after double digestion with XhoI and NotI and ligated to the expression vector as above. HindIII digestion of the resulting piD clone yielded the expected 7.3 kb fragment, a XhoI + BglIII double digest gave 2.2 kb and 5.1 kb fragments, and a SacI digest resulted in the expected 1.5 kb and 5.8 kb fragments.

The plasmid pBD was prepared by BsmI partial digestion of pBCD. The linear 7.2 kb fragment corresponding to cleavage of two adjacent BsmI sites was gel-purified, self-ligated as above, and E. coli DH5 $\alpha$  was transformed to ampicillin resistance. pBD was identified by the presence of 1.2 kb and 6.0 kb fragments upon SmaI digestion. The 4.2 kb insert was purified after double digestion with XhoI and NotI, and transferred to CDM8 as above. The clone piBD was confirmed by observation of the expected 0.8 kb and 7.8 kb fragments after HindIII digestion.

COS cells transiently expressing the piABCD, piBCD, piCD, and piD constructs, respectively, were surface-labelled with  $^{125}\text{I}$ , and immunoprecipitated with

-76-

anti-CR1 antibody. On SDS-PAGE following reduction, the product of the piABCD construct comigrated with the F allotype of CR1, while the deletion mutants demonstrated stepwise decrements of approximately 45,000 daltons, indicative of the deletion of one, two and three LHRs, respectively (Fig. 17).

#### 8.3.2. CONSTRUCTION OF DELETION MUTANTS piP1, piE1, piE2, piE-2, piU1, piU-2 and piA/D

The plasmid piABCD was completely digested with BstEII and the two fragments at 1.35 kb (a doublet) and 8.6 kb were gel-purified, mixed, and ligated, and E. coli DK1/P3 was transformed to ampicillin and tetracycline resistance. Colonies were screened by hybridization with the CR1 cDNA probe CR1-4 (see Section 8.1, supra), and strongly positive clones were picked and further screened by digestion with SmaI. piE1 was identified by the presence of two fragments at 2.7 kb and 7.3 kb, and piE2 was identified by a single 10.0 kb linear fragment. piE-2 was identified as a weakly CR1-4 positive clone that contained a single 8.6 kb SmaI fragment.

The plasmid piP1 was obtained by complete digestion of piABCD with PstI and gel-purification of the large, 10.0 kb fragment. This fragment was ligated and E. coli DK1/P3 was transformed with the mixture. The resulting plasmid, piP1, contained a single, 10.0 kb SmaI fragment.

The plasmids piU1 and piU-2 were prepared by first transforming the dcm<sup>-</sup> strain GM271/P3 with the plasmid pXLA, and isolating DNA. This DNA was double digested with StuI and NotI, and the 3.3 kb fragment was gel-purified. The plasmid pBSABCD was partially digested with NsiI, and the resulting four base pair 3' overhangs were removed by treatment with the Klenow fragment of E. coli DNA polymerase I. The DNA was then digested to completion with NotI, and

-77-

fragments of 5.4 kb and 4.0 kb were gel-purified. These were ligated to the 3.3 kb StuI-NotI fragment from pXLA, and the ligation mixture was used to transform E. coli DH5 $\alpha$  to ampicillin resistance. Colonies were screened by hybridization to the CR1 cDNA probe CR1-4, and positive clones were further checked by restriction digestion with HindIII which yielded three fragments of 0.8 kb, 1.3 kb and 6.5 kb for pU1, and two fragments of 0.8 kb and 6.5 kb for pU-2. The StuI-blunted NsiI splice was confirmed to be in-frame by DNA sequencing of these plasmids. The inserts of pU1 and pU-2, 5.6 kb and 4.2 kb, respectively, were gel-purified after XhoI and NotI double digestion, and were ligated to the expression vector CDM8 as described supra. The structures of the clones, piU1 and piU-2, were confirmed by restriction digestion with XhoI + PstI, yielding the expected two fragments of 1.2 kb and 8.8 kb for piU1 and a linear 8.7 kb fragment for piU-2.

The plasmid piA/D was prepared by first digesting piABCD with PstI to completion. The PstI digest was then partially digested with ApaI, and the 3' overhangs were removed with the Klenow fragment of E. coli DNA polymerase I. The DNA was then fractionated by agarose gel electrophoresis and the 7.5 kb fragment was isolated, ligated, and used to transform E. coli DK1/P3 to ampicillin and tetracycline resistance. The construction was confirmed by double digestion with KpnI + SacI, which yielded the expected four fragments of 0.8 kb, 1.5 kb, 1.7 kb and 3.3 kb.

30

35

-78-

9. EXAMPLE: IDENTIFICATION OF  
C3b AND C4b BINDING DOMAINS

9.1. ASSAYS AND RESULTS

Plasmids piABCD, piAD, piCD, and piD, containing  
5 the LHR(s) denoted by the capital letter(s) of their names,  
were transformed into COS cells, which were used in assays  
to assess the ability of their encoded CR1 fragments to bind  
C3b or C4b. Binding assays were carried out by observation  
of erythrocyte rosetting resulting from the binding of C3b  
10 or C4b-coated red cells by COS cells expressing a full-  
length CR1 molecule or a CR1 deletion mutant on their cell  
surface (transient expression). Transfected cells,  $1-4 \times 10^6$ /ml,  
were incubated with C3- or C4-bearing erythrocytes,  
2-6  $\times 10^8$ /ml, in 0.02 ml for 60 minutes at 20°C. The  
15 percentage of transfected cells forming rosettes was  
evaluated microscopically with a transfected cell scored as  
a rosette if there were at least five adherent erythrocytes.  
The results are shown in Table III.

20

25

30

35

TABLE III

FORMATION OF ROSETTES BETWEEN COS CELL TRANSFECTANTS  
EXPRESSING RECOMBINANT FORMS OF CR1 AND SHEEP  
ERYTHROCYTES BEARING C3(ma) OR C4(ma)

5

% Transfectants Forming Rosettes  
% Transfectants Fluorescent with Anti-CR1

	COS Cell Transfectant	% Transfectants Forming Rosettes		% Transfectants Fluorescent with Anti-CR1	
		EC3(ma) *		EC4(ma) #	
10	piABCD	109	(3) <sup>π</sup>	62	(2)
	piAD	8	"	107	"
	piBD	107	"	12	"
	piCD	127	"	32	"
	piD	0	"	0	"
	piA/D	11	(2)	83	(2)
	piE-2	1	(1)	102	(1)

15

\* The numbers of C3(ma) per erythrocyte were 60,000, 350,000 and 900,000, respectively, in the three experiments using this intermediate.

# The number of C4(ma) per erythrocyte were 160,000 and 140,000, respectively, in the two experiments using this intermediate.

20 <sup>π</sup> Number of experiments.

In each of three separate experiments, the proportion of COS cells expressing the full length piABCD construct that formed rosettes with the EC3(ma) was similar to the fraction having detectable recombinant receptor, as assessed by immunofluorescence using either YZ1 monoclonal anti-CR1 antibody or rabbit anti-CR1 antiserum (Table III). In contrast, cells expressing piD did not form rosettes, indicating that a C3-binding site(s) must reside in or require the presence of LHR-A, -B or -C. A site was shown to be present in both LHR-B and -C by demonstrating that cells expressing either the piBD or piCD constructs formed rosettes with EC3(ma). Cells expressing piAD, piA/D, or piE-2 did not have equivalent C3-binding function. As the

-80-

piE-2 construct differs from piCD only in having SCR-1 and -2 of LHR-A instead of the first two SCRs of LHR-C, the function of the C3-binding site in LHR-C must require these NH<sub>2</sub>-terminal SCRS.

5           The proportion of COS cells expressing the full  
length piABCD recombinant that formed rosettes with EC4(ma)  
was less than the fraction rosetting with EC3(ma), perhaps  
reflecting fewer C4(ma) per erythrocyte (Table III) or fewer  
C4-binding sites per receptor. Deletion mutants having all  
10 or part of LHR-A, the piAD, piA/D and piE-2 constructs,  
bound EC4(ma) better than did the deletion mutants, piBD and  
piCD; piD lacked this function. Thus, the C4-binding site  
of CR1 resides primarily in LHR-A, although secondary sites  
may be present in LHR-B and -C. The improved rosetting  
15 capability of the piE-2 construct relative to that of piCD  
suggests that SCR-1 and -2 of LHR-A are involved in the C4  
binding site.

          Radioimmunoassay of the binding of YZ1 monoclonal  
anti-CR1 antibody indicated significant uptake by COS cells  
20 expressing the piABCD, piAD, piBD, and piCD constructs  
(Table IV). Cells transfected with piD or piA/D, which is  
comprised of the five NH<sub>2</sub>-terminal SCRs of LHR-A and the  
three COOH-terminal SCRs of LHR-D, did not bind YZ1 anti-CR1  
antibody, although the products of these constructs bound  
25 polyclonal anti-CR1 antiserum (Table IV). Thus, the YZ1  
epitope is repeated in LHR-A, -B and -C, is not present in  
the NH<sub>2</sub>-terminal SCRs of LHR-A, and is not present or is  
inaccessible in LHR-D.

30

35

TABLE IV

BINDING OF MONOCLONAL AND POLYCLONAL ANTI-CR1 ANTIBODY TO  
COS CELL TRANSFECTANTS EXPRESSING RECOMBINANT FORMS OF CR1

5	COS Cell Transfectant	Bound YZ1 Monoclonal Antibody*	Bound Rabbit Polyclonal Antibody*
10	piABCD	2362	12277
	piAD	2879	19891
	piBD	3646	21922
	piCD	2189	19926
	piA/D	410	23052
	piD	404	16386
	CDM8	428	4886

\* Replicate samples of  $3 \times 10^5$  transfected cells in 0.1 ml phosphate-buffered saline containing 1% bovine serum albumin and 0.02% sodium azide were incubated at 0°C for 60 minutes with 3 µg/ml YZ1 IgG1 anti-CR1 mAb (Changelian, P.S., et al., 1985, J. Immunol. 134:1851) or with 90 µg/ml rabbit IgG anti-CR1 antibody. The cells were washed and resuspended in 0.1 ml of buffer containing 1-2 µCi/ml of  $^{125}\text{I}$ -F(ab')<sub>2</sub> goat-anti-mouse IgG or  $^{125}\text{I}$ -protein A. After 1-2 hours at 0°C, the cells were washed and assayed for  $^{125}\text{I}$ . Values shown are the mean of duplicate determinations, cpm per  $3 \times 10^5$  COS cells.

## 9.2. DISCUSSION

The conserved BsmI site found midway through the coding sequence of the first SCR in each LHR permitted the construction of a series of deletion mutants that corresponded closely to the boundaries of the LHRs, and maintained the open reading frame and the appropriate positions of the four cysteines necessary for the presumed disulfide bond formation (Fig. 16). Comparison of the C3(ma)- and C4(ma)-binding functions of these deletion mutants distinguished not only the LHRs having these specificities, but also those SCRs critical for determining the ligand specificity. Thus, the capacity of piAD, piA/D,

and piE-2 forms of the receptor, but not the piD form, to mediate rosette formation between the transfected COS cells and EC4(ma) indicated that the NH<sub>2</sub>-terminal two SCRs of LHR-A contained a site for interaction with this complement protein (Table III). This site was only relatively specific for C4(ma) because transfectants expressing piAD and piA/D also were capable of binding EC3(ma) (Table III). The C3(ma)-binding function of the receptors encoded by the piBD and piCD constructs, demonstrated by rosette assay and factor I-cofactor function for cleavage of C3(ma) (Table III; Fig. 18), indicated the presence of sites specific for C3(ma) in the first two SCRs of these LHRs. These sites also were capable of interacting with C4(ma) (Table III). Thus, there are preferential, but overlapping, C4- and C3-binding activities in LHR-A, -B and -C.

Alternatively, the capacity of the COS cells expressing the piBD and piCD constructs to bind EC4(ma) may have been caused by the transfer of nucleotides encoding the NH<sub>2</sub>-terminal 36 amino acids from SCR-1 of LHR-A to LHR-B and -C through the ligation of the BsmI fragments. However, these 36 amino acids alone did not confer on the piD product C4-rosetting function. We cannot exclude a secondary function of LHR-D in these reactions because this LHR was present in all the constructs assayed for function. The finding of three distinct ligand recognition sites in CR1, two for C3b and one for C4b (Fig. 19), indicates that each receptor molecule may be capable of effectively binding complexes bearing multiple C4b and C3b molecules despite having a relatively low affinity for monovalent ligands (Arnaout, M.A., et al., 1983, Immunology 48:229). This finding also provides an explanation for the inability of soluble C4b to inhibit formation of rosettes between erythrocytes bearing C3b and a human B lymphoblastoid cell line (Gaither, T.A., et al., 1983, J. Immunol. 131:899). Possible ligands for which CR1 would be especially adapted



-83-

may be the molecular complexes, C4b/C3b and C3b/C3b, that are generated during activation of the classical and alternative pathways, respectively. Since there are distinct binding sites in three of the four LHRs, the CR1 structural allotypes differing by their number of LHRs may have significant functional differences caused by variations in the number of ligand binding sites. Although in vitro studies have not reported differing binding activities of the F, S and F' (A, B and C, respectively) allotypes, the smaller F' allotype presumably having only three LHRs might have an impaired capability to clear immune complexes. The F' allotype has been reported possibly to be associated with systemic lupus erythematosus (van Dyne, S., et al., 1987, Clin. Exp. Immunol. 68:570).

10. EXAMPLE: DEMONSTRATION OF FACTOR I COFACTOR ACTIVITY

The recombinant CR1 protein, and specific fragments thereof, in both cell-surface and solubilized forms, were demonstrated to have C3b factor I cofactor activity.

Assays of factor I cofactor activity were carried out by modifications of a published procedure (Fearon, D.T., 1979, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 76:5867).

For assay of factor I cofactor activity of solubilized CR1 and fragments, cell-surface CR1 protein and fragments were solubilized with Nonidet P-40, and the lysate was immunoprecipitated with anti-CR1 monoclonal antibody YZ-1 coupled to Sepharose beads. Detergent lysates of  $1 \times 10^6$  transfected COS cells were immunoprecipitated sequentially with Sepharose UPC10 anti-levan and Sepharose-YZ-1. The immunoprecipitate was then assayed for factor I cofactor activity by incubation of the washed beads for 60 minutes at 37°C with 0.5  $\mu$ g of  $^{125}$ I-C3(ma) and 200 ng of factor I in 0.05 ml PBS, 0.5% NP-40. After incubation, the supernatant containing radiolabeled C3(ma) was analyzed by

SDS-polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis and autoradiography. Factor I cofactor activity was indicated by the appearance on the autoradiogram of lower molecular weight forms of the alpha chain of C3(ma) resulting from proteolytic cleavage by factor I.

5 For assay of factor I cofactor activity of cell-surface CR1 and fragments, transfected COS cells carrying a CR1 expression vector (piABCD, piAD, piBD, piCD, or piD, described supra) were incubated with 0.5  $\mu$ g  $^{125}$ I-C3(ma) and 0.2  $\mu$ g factor I (Fearon, D.T., 1977, J. Immunol. 119:1248), and analyzed as described supra.

10 The factor I-cofactor activity of cell-surface recombinant CR1 is shown in Figure 15. Factor I cleaved the alpha chain of C3(ma) into fragments of molecular weights 76,000 and 46,000 only in the presence of immunoimmobilized, recombinant CR1 or factor H (Fig. 15). The regions corresponding to bands from the autoradiogram were excised from the gel and assayed for  $^{125}$ I to determine the amount of alpha chain cleaved. In the presence of factor H, 91% of the alpha chain was cleaved while in the presence of increasing amounts of recombinant CR1, 26%, 41%, and 55%, respectively, was cleaved. Although the COS cells transfected with the CDM8 vector alone contained some endogenous factor I-cofactor activity, an increase in this function was evident with COS cells transfected with piABCD, piBD and piCD (Fig. 18). No enhanced cleavage of  $^{125}$ I-C3(ma) was seen with COS cells transfected with piAD or piD. Thus, among these constructs, only the deletion mutants, piBD and piCD, that conferred on COS cells a capacity for binding C3, also had factor I-cofactor activity for cleavage of C3.

25 The results of the assays for factor I cofactor activity with both cell-surface and solubilized forms of CR1 and fragments thereof are shown in Table V.

TABLE V  
 FACTOR I COFACTOR ACTIVITY OF CELL-SURFACE AND  
 SOLUBILIZED FORMS OF CR1 and CR1 FRAGMENTS

5	Plasmid <sup>a</sup>	Factor I Cofactor Activity <sup>b</sup>	
		Cell-Surface	Solubilized
	piABCD	+	+
	piAD	-	-
	piBD	+	ND <sup>c</sup>
10	piCD	+	+
	piD	-	ND <sup>d</sup>
<hr/>			
	<sup>a</sup> Encoding the assayed CR1 protein or fragment, and transfected into COS cells for expression.		
15	<sup>b</sup> (+) denotes an increase in cofactor activity above the endogenous level observed upon transfection with the CDM8 vector alone.		
	<sup>c</sup> Not determined.		
20	<sup>d</sup> Not determined, due to the absence from LHR-D of the epitope recognized by anti-CR1 monoclonal antibody YZ-1.		

As shown in Table V, expression of piABCD (encoding a full-length CR1 protein), piBD (encoding LHR-B and -D) or piCD (encoding LHR-C and -D) produced a CR1 product with C3b factor I cofactor activity. The data of Table V thus provide evidence that the CR1 protein or a fragment thereof can promote complement inactivation.

#### 30 11. EXAMPLE: EXPRESSION OF RECOMBINANT SOLUBLE CR1

The CR1 cDNA was modified by recombinant DNA procedures so that a soluble form (sCR1) of CR1 or CR1 fragments was produced. The sCR1 constructs were expressed

35

in a mammalian system where the expressed protein was secreted from the cells. Large quantities of the soluble polypeptides were produced, which, in contrast to the membrane bound form of CR1 proteins, did not have to be solubilized to obtain them in solution.

5

## 11.1. MATERIALS AND METHODS

### 11.1.1. ENZYME DIGESTIONS

10 All restriction enzyme digestions, linker ligations, and T4 DNA ligase and E. coli DNA polymerase reactions were done according to the manufacturer's (New England Biolabs, Inc., Beverley, MA) recommendations. E. coli DH1 or DH5 $\alpha$  were made competent by the procedure of Morrison, D.A., 1979, Meth. Enzymol 68:326-331. Competent bacterial cells were transformed with DNA according to Maniatis, T., et al., 1982, Molecular Cloning, A Laboratory Manual, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, Cold Spring Harbor, New York. Plasmids were purified by alkaline lysis or by the boiling method (Maniatis, T., et al., supra).

15

20

### 11.1.2. DNA FRAGMENT ISOLATIONS

DNA fragments were purified from agarose (BioRad, Richmond, CA) gels as follows. The appropriate DNA band was excised from the gel using a blade, and the agarose slice was placed on a piece of parafilm, sliced into very small pieces, and transferred to a new piece of parafilm. The agarose pieces were crushed, and the agarose transferred to a 1.5 ml tube. An equal volume of phenol (Ultra pure, BRL, Gaithersburg, MD) was added, the mixture vortexed, then frozen at -70°C for 10 minutes, and centrifuged for 10 minutes. The aqueous phase was further extracted twice with phenol/chloroform (1:1), and twice with chloroform. The DNA was then ethanol precipitated, the pellet washed, dried in vacuo, and resuspended in 10 mM Tris-HCl, pH 7.0, 1 mM EDTA.

25

30

35

-87-

DNA fragments were isolated from low gelling temperature agarose (FMC, Corp., Rockland, ME) as follows. The appropriate DNA band was excised from the agarose gel, placed in a 1.5 ml tube, and melted at 65°C for 15 minutes. The liquified gel was extracted with phenol containing 0.1% sodium dodecyl sulfate (SDS, ultra pure, BRL, Gaithersburg, MD). The aqueous phase was further extracted once with phenol-SDS and twice with chloroform. The DNA was then ethanol precipitated in 2.0 M NH<sub>4</sub>Acetate, dried, and resuspended in water.

#### 11.1.3. TRANSFECTION INTO MAMMALIAN CELLS

Transfection of DNAs into mammalian cells was performed by the CaPO<sub>4</sub> precipitation and glycerol shock procedure of Graham and van der Eb (1973, Virology 52:456-467). DUX B11 CHO cells, after being incubated with the DNA-calcium phosphate preparation for 4 to 6 hours, were subjected to glycerol shock by removing the growth medium by aspiration and adding 5 ml of 20% glycerol DMEM medium for 1 minute. Cells were then washed twice in complete alpha MEM and incubated in this medium for 48 hours.

#### 11.1.4. CHO TRANSFECTANT CELL CULTURE

DUX B11 CHO cell transfectants were grown in DHFR (dihydrofolate reductase) selection medium consisting of alpha MEM medium (Gibco) without nucleosides, supplemented with 10% dialyzed fetal calf serum (Gibco) and 4 mM L-glutamine. Amplification was carried out by growing cells in increasing concentrations of methotrexate (Sigma, #A-6770, Amethopterin) (Kaufman, R.J., et al., 1985, Molec. Cell Biol. 5:1750-1759).

11.1.5. ELISA FOR THE DETECTION OF SOLUBLE CR1 LEVELS11.1.5.1. CR1 STANDARDS

Detergent lysates of hemoglobin-free red blood cell (RBC) ghosts were used as a CR1 standard in the ELISA (enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay). The ghosts were prepared as previously described (Wong, W.W. and Fearon D.T., 1987, Meth. Enzymol 150:579-585). Briefly, expired whole blood was obtained from the Red Cross. The red cells were washed three times in PBS, then lysed in 6 volumes of hypotonic lysis buffer (10 mM Tris pH 8, 0.1 mM PMSF (phenyl methyl sulfonyl fluoride), 0.1 mM TPCK (tosylamide-phenylethyl chloromethyl ketone), aprotonin, 2 mM EDTA). The ghosts were washed several times in lysis buffer, counted in a hemocytometer, aliquoted and frozen at -70°C until needed. For the CR1 ELISA, ghosts were diluted to  $1.6 \times 10^8$  ghosts/ml in solubilizing buffer (10 mM Tris pH 8, 50 mM KCl, 0.2% NP40, 0.3% DOC, 6.2 mM PMSF, 0.2 mM iodacetamide, aprotonin, 0.1 mM TPCK, 2 mM EDTA, 0.2% NaN<sub>3</sub>) and serially diluted to  $2.5 \times 10^6$  ghosts/ml for use as standards in the ELISA. Absorbances at 490 nm were plotted and any unknown sample run was referred to the plot to obtain ghost equivalents/ml.

11.1.5.2. CR1 ELISA

Immulon-II plates were coated with 100 µl/well of a 0.4 µg/ml concentration of an anti-CR1 monoclonal antibody (clone J3D3, AMAC IOT 17) (Cook, J., et al., 1985, Molec. Immunol. 22:531-538) in PBS and incubated overnight at 4°C. The antibody solution was then discarded and the plates were blocked by the addition of blocking buffer (1.0% BSA in PBS) at 300 µl/well and incubation at 37°C for 2 hours. After blocking, plates were used immediately or stored at 4°C until needed.

-89-

Plates were washed three times using PBS containing 0.05% Tween-20. Samples were added at 100  $\mu$ l/well in duplicate and incubated 2 hours at 37°C. If necessary, samples were diluted in solubilizing buffer. Standard RBC ghosts were included on each plate. After sample incubation, plates were washed three times and a conjugate (Wilson, M.B. and NaKane, P.K., 1978, Immunofluorescence and Related Staining Techniques, North Holland Biomedical Press, pp. 215-224) of horseradish peroxidase (HRP) and the monoclonal antibody YZ1 (Changelian, P.S., et al., 1985, J. Immunol 184:1851-1858) was diluted 1:8000 in 50% FCS, 50% blocking buffer and added at 100  $\mu$ l/well. After incubating for two hours at 37°C, the plates were again washed three times with PBS containing 0.05% Tween-20. The substrate orthophenylenediamine (OPD) was added at 0.2% concentration in substrate buffer (0.36% citric acid  $H_2O$ , 1.74%  $Na_2HPO_4 \cdot 7H_2O$ , 0.1% thimerosal, 0.4%  $H_2O_2$ , pH 6.3) at 100  $\mu$ l/well. The reaction was stopped after 20 minutes at room temperature using 50  $\mu$ l/well of 2 N  $H_2SO_4$ . Absorbances at 490 nm were read.

#### 11.2. GENETIC MODIFICATIONS OF CR1 CODING SEQUENCES

CR1 cDNA is composed of approximately 6,951 nucleotide base pairs (Fig. 1, Sections 6, 7, supra). The translational stop signal of the native cDNA is located at base pair 6145. The protein is a membrane-bound receptor molecule composed of four long homologous repeats (LHRs) which are exposed on the exterior surface of the cell membrane, plus a membrane-spanning domain of approximately 25 amino acids, followed by a carboxyl terminal region extending into the cytoplasm. This cytoplasmic domain consists of forty-three amino acids. The strategy we used to produce soluble CR1 molecules (sCR1) was to remove the

transmembrane region that anchors a protein in the cell membrane and then to express the truncated constructs as secreted polypeptides.

#### 11.2.1. CONSTRUCTION OF pBSCR1c

5                   Plasmid pBSABCD (Example 8, supra) contains the  
CR1 cDNA from nucleotides 1 to 6860 and lacks the  
untranslated sequences 3' to the EcoRV site at nucleotide  
6860. CR1 cDNA possesses a unique BalI restriction  
10                   endonuclease recognition site at base pair 5914, twenty-nine  
base pairs away from the start of the transmembrane domain.  
pBSABCD was first digested with BalI to produce a linear  
molecule with flush ends and was then ligated using T4 DNA  
ligase to a synthetic oligonucleotide consisting of two 38  
15                   nucleotide complementary strands with the following  
sequence:

5': CCAAATGTACCTCTCGTGACATGATGCTtaaCTCGAG

3': GGTTTACATGGAGAGCACGTGTACTACGAATTGAGCTC

                  The resulting molecule had a restored BalI site  
20                   and an altered sequence which reproduced the native CR1  
sequence up to and including the alanine residue at the  
start of the transmembrane domain. In addition, a  
translational stop signal (in lower case and underlined  
above) had been introduced immediately after the alanine,  
25                   followed by an XhoI restriction site to facilitate subcloning  
the altered cDNA.

XhoI digestion of this plasmid (designated  
pBSCR1c) excised the cDNA insert (designated sCR1c) by  
cutting at the oligonucleotide-added XhoI site in the cDNA  
30                   and at the XhoI site in the pBSKS+® multiple cloning site at  
the 5' end of the CR1 cDNA. pBSCR1c contains the following  
C-terminal sequences:



-91-

Base No. 5911: CTGGCCAAATGTACCTCTCGTGCACATGATGCTTAACTCGAG  
Amino Acids: L A K C T S R A H D A END XhoI  
site

#### 11.2.2. CONSTRUCTION OF pBSCR1s

5 A second SCR1 construct lacking a transmembrane region was generated as follows. pBSABCD was digested with SacI which cut at the unique SacI site at nucleotide base pair 5485 in the CR1 cDNA and at the SacI site in the multiple cloning site of the host plasmid, located at the 3' end of the CR1 cDNA. This digestion resulted in the excision of 1375 nucleotides of DNA sequence from the 3' end of the cDNA. This fragment was then removed electrophoretically. The exposed ends of the resulting plasmid, containing the remaining SCR1 cDNA, were made flush using T4 DNA polymerase and a blunt-end ligation was performed. The Pharmacia universal translation terminator (catalog #27-4890-01, Pharmacia, Inc., Piscataway, NJ), a self-complementary oligomer which contains translational stop signals in all three reading frames, was also included in the ligation. Upon ligation, the inserted oligomer provided a new translation stop signal for the SCR1 cDNA.

#### 11.2.3. CONSTRUCTION OF pBM-CR1c

25 pBMT3X is a eukaryotic expression vector (Krystal, M., et al., 1986, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 83:2709-2713) that contains the human metallothionein - 1A gene, which confers to cells resistance to increased levels of heavy metals such as cadmium. The vector also contains the mouse metallothionein-1 gene that contains an engineered XhoI site preceding the initiation codon for the Mt-1 protein. The XhoI site is used as the insertion site for expression of genes under the control of the mouse Mt-I promoter.

35

-92-

5 sCR1c insert (approximately 5.9 kb) was excised from pBSCR1c using XhoI and then ligated to the unique XhoI site of vector pBMT3X. The correct orientation of the sCR1c insert in pBMT3X was determined by restriction digestion (Maniatis, T., et al., 1982, Molecular Cloning, A Laboratory Manual, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory, Cold Spring Harbor, New York). The resulting plasmid was named pBM-CR1c.

10 11.2.4. CONSTRUCTION OF DELETION MUTANTS  
pT-CR1c1, pT-CR1c2, pT-CR1c3  
pT-CR1c4, and pT-CR1c5

15 Various deletion mutants were also constructed that specifically deleted portions of the sCR1 cDNA (Fig. 20). Each deletion mutant lacked the transmembrane region of the full length cDNA so that expression of the mutants would yield soluble polypeptides.

11.2.4.1. pT-CR1c1

pBSCR1c was digested with SmaI, resulting in two fragments of size 2.56 kb and 7.3 kb. These fragments were separated by agarose gel electrophoresis, and the 7.3 kb fragment was purified and religated to itself. E. coli DH5 $\alpha$  cells were made competent (Morrison, D.A., 1979, Meth. Enzymol. 68:326-331) and then transformed with the ligation mix. The resulting plasmid was named pBL-CR1c1. This construct removed 38% of LHR-B, 100% of LHR-C, and 51% of LHR-D of the CR1c insert. In addition, it regenerated the SmaI site at junction 2335/4894 bp and maintained the correct translational frame. pBL-CR1c1 was digested with XhoI and the CR1 insert was separated from the pBluescript vector. The isolated CR1 fragment was then inserted into the unique XhoI site of expression vector pTCSgpt to produce plasmid pT-CR1c1.

11.2.4.2. pT-CR1c2

pBSCR1c was digested with ClaI and BalI, resulting in two fragments of size 3.96 kb and 5.9 kb. These fragments were purified from an agarose gel. Plasmid pBR322 was digested with ClaI and BalI and the 2.9 kb pBR322 fragment was purified and ligated to the 5.9 kb fragment from pBSCR1c. E. coli DH5 $\alpha$  cells were transformed with the ligation mix and the resulting plasmid was termed pBR8.8. This plasmid was digested with XbaI, generating two fragments of size 7.45 kb and 1.35 kb. The 7.45 kb fragment was purified from an agarose gel and religated to itself. The resulting plasmid, pBR7.45, was digested with ClaI and BalI, and the isolated 4.5 kb fragment containing the SCR1 cDNA was ligated to the 3.96 kb fragment from pBSCR1c, resulting in plasmid pBL-CR1c2. This construct removed 90% of LHR-B in the SCR1 insert, regenerated the XbaI site at junction 1637/2987 bp, and maintained the correct reading frame. pBL-CR1c2 was digested with XhoI, and the SCR1 insert was separated from the pBluescript $\circ$  vector. The isolated SCR1 fragment was then inserted into the unique XhoI site of expression vector pTCSgpt to produce plasmid pT-CR1c2.

11.2.4.3. pT-CR1c3

pBSCR1c was digested with NsiI resulting in three fragments of sizes 1.09 kb, 1.35 kb, and 7.46 kb. The 7.46 kb fragment was purified from an agarose gel and religated to itself, thus generating plasmid pBL-CR1c3. This construction removed 77% of LHR-A and 100% of LHR-B in the SCR1 insert. The NsiI site was regenerated at junction 463/2907 bp while maintaining the correct translation frame. pBL-CR1c3 was digested with XhoI and the SCR1 insert separated from the pBluescript $\circ$  vector. The isolated SCR1 fragment was then inserted into the unique XhoI site of expression vector pTCSgpt to produce plasmid pT-CR1c3.

-94-

11.2.4.4. pT-CR1c4

pBSCR1c digested with PstI. The PstI site in the polylinker region of pBluescript® had been removed during ligation of the CR1 cDNA to this vector (Example 8.1, supra). The resulting fragments of size 1.35 kb and 8.5 kb were separated by gel electrophoresis, and the 8.5 kb fragment was purified and religated to itself, generating plasmid pBL-CR1c4. This construction removed 31% of LHR-A and 69% of LHR-B of the SCR1 insert. The PstI site was regenerated at junction 1074/2424 bp, thus maintaining the correct reading frame. pBL-CR1c4 was digested with XhoI and the SCR1 insert separated from the pBluescript® vector. The isolated SCR1 fragment was then inserted into the unique XhoI site of expression vector pTCSgpt to produce plasmid pT-CR1c4.

11.2.4.5. pT-CR1c5

pBL-CR1c1 was digested with SmaI, thus linearizing the plasmid at the unique SmaI site. The plasmid was dephosphorylated, and ligated to phosphorylated NheI linker containing a Nonsense codon (New England Biolabs, Beverley, MA). This type of linker contains a translational stop codon in all three possible reading frames, and it also contains an NheI restriction site, which facilitates confirming the presence of the nonsense linker in the SCR1 cDNA. The resulting plasmid was named pBL-CR1c5, and it retained LHR-A and 62% of LHR-B of the SCR1 cDNA. pBL-CR1c5 was digested with XhoI, and the SCR1 insert was separated from the pBluescript® vector. The isolated SCR1 fragment was then inserted into the unique XhoI site of expression vector pTCSgpt to produce plasmid pT-CR1c5.

### 11.3. EXPRESSION OF SOLUBLE CR1

As demonstrated herein, the expression of a soluble form of CR1 that can be secreted from cells in high yield is (i) not limited to one exact site in the CR1 cDNA to be used for deletion or truncation, and (ii) is also not limited to the use of a particular expression vector (see infra). The ability to produce secreted sCR1 was demonstrated in two different expression systems.

#### 11.3.1. CONSTRUCTION OF pTCS SERIES OF EXPRESSION VECTORS

The pTCS series of expression vectors which were used consists of three plasmids, each with a unique XhoI cloning site for insertion of cDNAs (Fig. 21). Transcription of the inserted cDNA is driven by a set of tandem promoters. The SV40 early promoter which is located upstream of the adenovirus 2 major late promoter (AD2 MLP). Between the beginning of the cDNA and the AD2 MLP is the adenovirus tripartite leader. Transcribed mRNAs are terminated at a polyadenylation signal provided by the murine immunoglobulin kappa (Ig $\kappa$ ) sequences located downstream of the XhoI cDNA cloning site. Selectable markers xanthine-guanine phosphoribosyltransferase (gpt), dihydrofolate reductase (dhfr), or neomycin resistance (neo<sup>r</sup>) were provided by the insertion of the corresponding markers from pSV2gpt, pSV2dhfr, or pSV2neo, respectively. These plasmids were also the source of the bacterial origin of replication and beta-lactamase gene for ampicillin resistance. In general, the choice of which of these vectors to use depends upon which selectable marker or combination of markers is preferred for selection of the recombinants.

The complete DNA sequences are known for adenovirus 2 (Ad2), SV40, pSV2cat (Gorman, C., 1985, DNA Cloning, Volume II, A Practical Approach, ed. D.M. Glover,

-96-

IRL Press, pp. 143-190), and murine immunoglobulin kappa. Sequences are located in the GenBank database and the National Biomedical Research annotation and references. Any of these sequences could also serve as a source for the appropriate segments of the pTCS vectors.

The vectors pTCSgpt, pTCSneo, and pTCS dhfr were constructed from the intermediate plasmids pEAXgpt and pMLEgpt as follows:

#### 11.3.1.1. CONSTRUCTION OF pEAXgpt

Step 1. The Ad2 MLP DNA fragment was derived from M13 mp9/MLP (Concino, M.F., et al., 1983, J. Biol. Chem. 258:8493-8496). This plasmid contains adenovirus 2 sequences of nucleotides 5778 (XhoI site) to 6231 (HindIII site) including the PvuII restriction site at nucleotide 6069 and the SacII site at nucleotide 5791 (see NBRF Nucleic database, accession #Gdad2). The XhoI to HindIII fragment had been cloned into the HindIII and SalI sites of M13 mp9 to generate plasmid M13 mp9/MLP.

Plasmid M13 mp9/MLP was digested with EcoRI and HindIII and the smaller MLP containing fragment isolated. A pUC plasmid (Pharmacia, Inc., Piscataway, NJ) was also digested with EcoRI and HindIII and the larger fragment from this plasmid was then ligated to the EcoRI to HindIII MLP fragment. This resulted in a new MLP-containing plasmid with the plasmid backbone of pUC. This plasmid was digested with SmaI, ligated to SalI linkers, and recircularized. This new plasmid was then digested with PvuII which cleaved the plasmid at the PvuII site located at position #6069 within the adenovirus 2 insert sequences. The resulting linear fragment was ligated to XhoI linkers and recircularized. This plasmid was then digested with XhoI and SalI and the smaller fragment containing MLP DNA was isolated (fragment #1).

-97-

Step 2. Plasmid, pSV2gpt (American Type Culture Collection (ATCC) Accession No. 37145), was digested with PvuII, ligated to SalI linkers, and digested with SalI. The final product was a linear pSV2gpt fragment that served as the source of the gpt gene (fragment #2).

5       Step 3. A murine immunoglobulin Ig $\kappa$  fragment (Hieter, P.A., et al., 1980, Cell 22:197-207) was digested with HaeIII and AvaII and the fragment containing the polyadenylation sequences isolated. In the murine Ig kappa sequence available in the NBRF Nucleic database (accession #Kcms), the Ig stop codon is at position 1296, followed by the AvaII site at 1306, the AATAAA polyadenylation site at 1484, and the HaeIII site at 1714. The overhanging ends of this fragment were filled in with E. coli DNA polymerase, and the fragment was then ligated to XhoI linkers, and  
10       digested with XhoI. This fragment (fragment #3) served as the source of the polyadenylation site.  
15

Step 4. Fragments 1, 2, and 3 were ligated together with T4 DNA ligase to produce a circular plasmid. The correct orientation of the fragments in this plasmid was confirmed by restriction enzyme analysis. Downstream of the XhoI cDNA cloning site was the murine kappa polyadenylation site, and further downstream from this site was the SV40 promoter and gpt gene. Upstream of the XhoI site was the MLP promoter and further upstream from this promoter was the bacterial origin of replication and ampicillin gene. This plasmid was then digested with SalI and the overhanging ends filled in with E. coli DNA polymerase. The resulting blunt end fragment was ligated to EcoRI linkers and recircularized with T4 DNA ligase. This final plasmid was designated pEAXgpt.  
20  
25  
30

11.3.1.2. CONSTRUCTION OF pMLEgpt

5        Step 1. Plasmid pMLP CAT (Lee, R.F., et al., 1988, Virology, 165:51-56) is an expression plasmid with a pML vector backbone and contains the adenovirus 2 MLP and tripartite leader sequences 5' to the CAT gene. pMLP CAT was digested with XhoI and SacII; the XhoI cut at a site between the CAT gene and the L3 region of the tripartite leader, and SacII cut at position #5791 within the adenovirus DNA but 5' of the MLP. The AD2 MLP and tripartite leader were thus located on this small XhoI to SacII fragment (fragment #4).

15        Step 2. Plasmid pEAXgpt was digested with XhoI and SacII, and the smaller MLP containing fragment was discarded. The larger fragment (fragment #5) was isolated. Fragments 4 and 5, both with SacII and XhoI ends, were ligated to produce plasmid pMLEgpt.

11.3.1.3. CONSTRUCTION OF pTCSgpt

20        Step 1. pMLEgpt was digested with SacII and the ends filled in with T4 DNA polymerase to yield a blunt end fragment (fragment #6). This SacII site is located at nucleotide 5791 in the Adenovirus 2 sequence, 5' of MLP-tripartite leader.

25        Step 2. pSV2dhfr (ATCC Accession No. 37146) was digested with HindIII and PvuII. The smaller 342 nucleotide fragment containing the SV40 early promoter was blunt ended using the Klenow fragment of E. coli DNA polymerase (fragment #7). Fragments 6 and 7 were ligated with T4 DNA ligase. Restriction enzyme analysis confirmed that the fragments were correctly oriented to give two, tandem promoters upstream of the XhoI cDNA cloning site, each promoter able to prime RNA synthesis in the same direction. This plasmid was named pTCSgpt (Fig. 22).

35



-99-

11.3.1.4. CONSTRUCTION OF pTCSdhfr

Step 1. pSV2dhfr was digested with HindIII and PvuII, and the larger fragment was then purified from an agarose gel (fragment #8). The smaller SV40 early promoter containing fragment was discarded.

5 Step 2. pTCSgpt was digested with EcoRI and then filled in with the Klenow fragment of E. coli DNA polymerase to generate blunt ends. This linear fragment was then digested with HindIII, and the fragment (about 1600  
10 nucleotides) containing the pTCS transcription unit of SV40 promoter, MLP, tripartite leader, XhoI cDNA cloning site, murine Igλ sequences, and second SV40 promoter was isolated (fragment #9). This fragment had one flush end and one HindIII overhanging end. Ligation of fragments 8 and 9  
15 generated plasmid pTCSdhfr.

11.3.1.5. CONSTRUCTION OF pTCSneo

Step 1. pSV2neo (ATCC No. 37149) was digested with HindIII and BamHI, and the larger fragment (fragment  
20 #10) was isolated. This fragment contained the plasmid backbone and neo gene.

Step 2. pTCSdhfr was digested with HindIII and BamHI, and the pTCS transcription unit (fragment #11) was isolated from an agarose gel after electrophoresis of the  
25 digestion products. Ligation of fragments 10 and 11 generated plasmid pTCSneo.

11.3.2. EXPRESSION AND ASSAY OF PLASMIDS pBSCR1c, pBSCR1s AND pBM-CR1c, MAMMALIAN EXPRESSION VECTORS CONTAINING SOLUBLE CR1 CODING SEQUENCES

30

35

11.3.2.1. EXPRESSION OF CR1 CONSTRUCTS TRUNCATED AT  
DIFFERENT POSITIONS WITHIN THE CR1 cDNA

Plasmids pBSCR1c and pBSCR1s were constructed (Section 11.1, supra) such that most of the cDNA coding regions, except the transmembrane and cytoplasmic regions were preserved (Fig. 20). pBSCR1s is shorter than pBSCR1c since it is also missing a portion of LHR-D and SCRs 29 and 30 that are present in pBSCR1c. The sCR1 portions of these plasmids were inserted into pTCSgpt, followed by transfection and expression as described infra.

10        pBSCR1c/pTCSgpt construction: pBSCR1c was digested with XhoI to yield the 5.9 kb insert, sCR1c. sCR1c was inserted into the XhoI cDNA cloning site of pTCSgpt to produce pBSCR1c/pTCSgpt.

15        pBSCR1s/pTCSgpt construction: pBSCR1s was digested with XhoI and PvuI to release the sCR1s insert. The ends of the insert were made blunt with T4 DNA polymerase. This insert was purified from an agarose gel. Vector pTCSgpt was digested with XhoI, and the overhanging XhoI ends were filled in with E. coli DNA polymerase I.  
20        Next, the sCR1s insert was ligated to the blunt end vector to produce pBSCR1s/pTCSgpt.

Plasmids pBSCR1c/pTCSgpt and pBSCR1s/pTCSgpt were digested with FspI, and the resultant linear DNA's were transfected into Chinese Hamster Ovary cells that were mutant in the dhfr gene (CHO DUX B11 cells) via calcium phosphate coprecipitation with plasmid pSV2dhfr.  
25        Transfectants were selected by their ability to grow in DHFR selection medium. Culture supernatants of transfectant clones were assayed for secreted sCR1 by ELISA. Culture supernatants from fifty pBSCR1c/pTCSgpt recombinants were assayed and the positive recombinants were taken through the amplification process by culturing them in increasing concentrations of methotrexate. In addition, pools of  
30        transfectants were prepared by co-culturing eight  
35

-101-

pBSCR1c/pTCSgpt transfectants together per pool and carrying them through the same amplification process. Results of the amplification are presented in Tabl VI.

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

-102-

TABLE VI  
EXPRESSION OF pBSCR1c/pTCSgpt

		<u>Secreted Soluble CR1 (<math>\mu</math>g/ml)</u>				
	<u>CLONE</u>	<u>0 MTX</u>	<u>20 nM MTX</u>	<u>50 nM MTX</u>	<u>100 nM MTX</u>	<u>500 nM MTX</u>
5	2*	0.7	3.4	11	10.9	
	4	0.04	0.1			
	6	0.04				
	9	0.02				
	10	0.2				
	11	0.12				
	12	0.14				
	13	0.07				
	14	0.2				
	15	0.45	1.1	7.3	9.0	
	21	0.07				
	30	0.27	<0.02	<0.02		
10	35*†	0.82	6.3	8.4	10.9	10.9
	40	0.05				
	41	0.05				
	50	0.12				
15	52	0.12				
	POOL					
20	A		0.02			
	B		0.04			
	C		0.23			
	D		<0.02	<0.02		
	E		0.27	1.1		
	F		3.6	5.8	9.1	
	G		0.27			
	H		0.04			

25 \* clones 2 and 35 were chosen for large scale production of sCR1.

† Clone 35 was subcloned by limiting dilution, and the production of soluble CR1 was determined for each subclone. pBSCR1c/pTCSgpt-clone 35.6 was the highest producer, showing 17.7  $\mu$ g/ml sCR1.  
 MTX: methotrexate

30

Twelve recombinants from pBSCR1s/pTCSgpt were assayed for production of soluble CR1 by ELISA. All twelve

35

-103-

candidates showed detectable levels of secreted sCR1. The best producers gave levels of sCR1 which were comparable to those produced by the best pBSCR1c/pTCSgpt transfectants.

pBSCR1c/pTCSgpt and pBSCR1s/pTCSgpt recombinants produced soluble CR1 with similar levels of production. This indicated that the ability to produce a soluble CR1 polypeptide was not dependent upon an exact truncation point within the CR1 cDNA.

Initial attempts to amplify the cell line, clone 35.6 beyond 500 nm methotrexate were not successful. For this reason, alternative cell lines were sought from the panel shown in Table VI. Candidates were chosen on the basis of expression comparable to clone 35. At methotrexate levels in which the expression was beginning to plateau, lines were subcloned and screened for sCR1 concentrations in the supernatants. Cell line 15, resistant to 50 nm methotrexate, was chosen on this basis. It was subcloned, creating cell line 15.19, increasing the expression to the 35.6 level. Next, 15.19 was cultured in media containing various concentrations of methotrexate. Only 2500 nm methotrexate produced an elevated sCR1 expression level, increasing the secretion by 63% above 35.6. This cell line, designated 15.192500, was then subcloned by limited dilution, creating cell lines 15.192500.07, 15.192500.10 and 15.192500.65. These cell lines produced 143, 119, and 103 percent more sCR1 per ml respectively than 35.6.

#### 11.3.2.2. EXPRESSION OF sCR1c IN TWO DIFFERENT EXPRESSION SYSTEMS

The truncated CR1 cDNA insert, sCR1c, was inserted into the expression vector pTCSgpt and expressed as described above. It was also inserted into the expression vector pBMT3X as described supra in Section 11.2.3, to yield pBM-CR1c. Both these expression vectors have very strong

35

-104-

promoters. Expression of soluble CR1 was tested in both systems to determine whether one system would produce better yields of secreted polypeptide.

5 C127I mouse cells (ATCC Accession No. CRL 1616, Rockville, Maryland) were transfected with pBM-CR1c using the calcium phosphate method (Graham, F.L. and van der Eb, A.J., 1973, Virology 52:456-467). After glycerol shock, the cells were refed with D-MEM medium containing 10% fetal bovine serum and 2 mM L-glutamine, and incubated at 37°C for 10 48 hours. Thereafter, the cells were trypsinized, and split at 1:5 and 1:10 ratios into complete D-MEM medium plus 10  $\mu$ M cadmium chloride. Cadmium-resistant colonies appeared within 10 days. Ten colonies were removed with the use of cloning cylinders. Each colony was transferred to a 60 mm 15 petri dish containing complete D-MEM medium, and incubated at 37°C, 5% CO<sub>2</sub> until the cells reached confluency. Thereafter, for each dish, the cells were trypsinized and divided into three 60 mm dishes to be used for preparation of frozen cell stocks, RNA extraction, and ELISA test of the 20 cell medium for the presence of secreted sCR1c.

When cell medium from each confluent petri dish was removed and subjected to ELISA analysis, all pBM-CR1c clones tested were positive for soluble CR1 production. The levels of secreted sCR1 from the pBM-CR1c recombinants were 25 comparable to those from the pBSCR1c/pTCSgpt recombinants. This indicated that the ability to produce high levels of secreted sCR1 polypeptide was not dependent upon the use of only certain promoters or expression systems.

30 11.3.3. EXPRESSION AND ASSAY OF PLASMIDS pT-CR1c1, pT-CR1c2, pT-CR1c3, pT-CR1c4, and pT-CR1c5, MAMMALIAN EXPRESSION VECTORS CONTAINING SOLUBLE CR1 CODING SEQUENCES

The pT-CR1c series of deletion mutants were missing the transmembrane and cytoplasmic domains, as were 35 the constructs, pBSCR1c and pBSCR1s. In addition, the

deletion mutants also contained fairly large deletions of various LHR regions of the CR1 cDNA (see Fig. 20). The deletion mutants were expressed in CHO DUX B11 cells and the levels of soluble CR1 polypeptide produced were measured.

5 For each deletion construct, forty different pools of clones were selected for ELISA analysis to determine whether soluble CR1 polypeptides were being produced. Four of five pT-CR1c constructs were found to be secreting sCR1 into the cell culture medium, as determined  
10 either by ELISA or by the presence of functional activity in the cell culture media. Supernatants from cells transfected with three of the five pT-CR1c constructs were producing sCR1 that was functional as determined by a hemolytic assay (see Table VII and Section 13.2, *infra*).

15

TABLE VII

20 PRODUCTION OF FUNCTIONAL sCR1 FRAGMENTS\*

	Construct	ELISA	Hemolytic Assay
	pT-CR1c1	-	+
25	pT-CR1c2	+	+
	pT-CR1c3	-	-
	pT-CR1c4	+	Not determined
	pT-CR1c5	-	+

30 \* Supernatants tested for ELISA or hemolytic assays were obtained either from cultures growing in T75 flasks or in 24 well dishes. Since various amounts of soluble CR1 could have accumulated in the culture supernatants under

35

-106-

these conditions, the results shown are qualitative. (+) indicates the production of functional sCR1 as detected by the indicated assay.

5                   The fact that the deletion mutants were also able  
to produce soluble CR1, further demonstrated that the  
ability to express sCR1 was not dependent upon one exact  
genetic modification of the CR1 cDNA. As long as the  
10 transmembrane regions were deleted, all constructs were able  
to produce a soluble polypeptide.

## 12. EXAMPLE: PRODUCTION AND PURIFICATION OF SOLUBLE CR1

15                   Large quantities of sCR1 were produced in a  
hollow fiber bioreactor system. The quantities of sCR1  
obtained were proportional to the relative yield of the  
inoculated recombinant clones. For optimal purification  
results, a serum-free medium was chosen that resulted in  
high production levels of sCR1 in the absence of large  
20 quantities of exogenously added fetal calf serum  
polypeptides.

### 12.1. LARGE SCALE PRODUCTION OF SOLUBLE CR1

25                   A Cell-Pharm<sup>™</sup> Cell Culture System I (CD Medical,  
Inc., Miami Lakes, FL), equipped with a model IV-L hollow  
fiber bioreactor (30 kD molecular weight cutoff), was  
assembled under sterile conditions. Two clones (clone 2 and  
clone 35 of pBSCR1c/pTCSgpt) were expanded into eight T-225  
flasks. At confluency, the cells were trypsinized, washed,  
30 pelleted, and resuspended in culture media. Approximately  $5 \times 10^8$   
cells of clone 2 and  $10 \times 10^8$  cells of clone 35 were  
inoculated into two separate hollow fiber bioreactors. A 20  
liter feed reservoir of alpha-MEM plus 10% fetal calf serum,  
8 mM L-glutamine, 100 µg/ml penicillin-streptomycin and the  
35 appropriate concentration of methotrexate (50 nM for clone



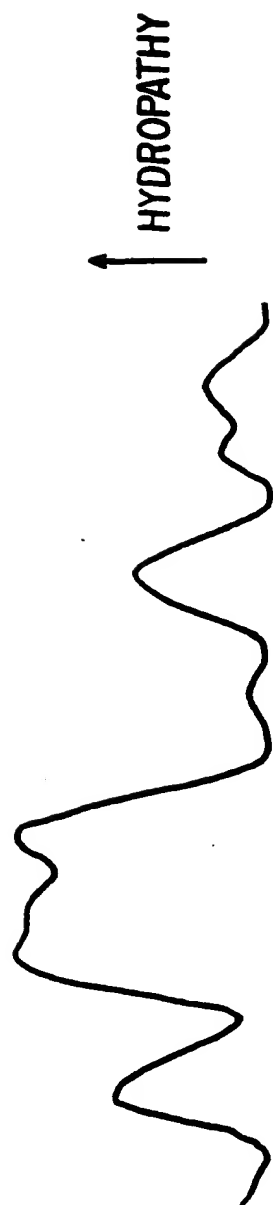
25/60

## FIG. 6A

SCR No.

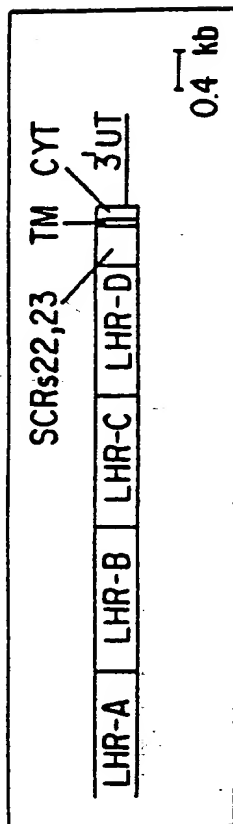
1	1	KLKTQTNASDFPIGTSKYECPREY GRP F	S ITC LD N L VW SS PK DVC KR	49
2	50	KSKCTPPDPV NGMWHVIT DIQVSRINYSCTGHRLLIGH	SSAECI LS GNA AHW STKP PICQ R	111
3	112	IP CGLPPT IANGDFIS TNRENFHYGVSUVTYRCNPGSG GRKVFEVLGEP	SYCTSNDD Q VGIW SG P APQCI	181
4	182	IPNK C TPN VENGILVS DNRSLFSLNEWEFRCPGFVWKGP	VKC QALNKWE PELPSCS R	244
5	245	V CQPPD VLHA ERTQROKDNFSPQEV YSCPEGYDLRGAA	S MRC T PQ GDW S PAAPTC E	303
6	304	V KSCDDFMGOLLNGRVLFPNL QLGAKVDFVCDGEGQLKGS	SASYCV LA GME SLWNSS VPVC EQ	366
7	367	IF CPSPV IPNGRH TGRLEVPFEGKAVNYTCDPHPD RGTS FDLIGE	STIRCTS D PQNGWV SS P APRCG	436
8	437	ILGH CQAPDHFLF AKLTQTNASDFPIGTSKYECPREY GRP F	S ITC LD N L VW SS PK DVC KR	499
9	500	KSKCTPPDPV NGMWHVIT DIQVSRINYSCTGHRLLIGH	SSAECI LS GNT AHW STKP PICQ R	561
10	562	IP CGLPPT IANGDFIS TNRENFHYGVSUVTYRCNLS RGRKVFEVLGEP	SYCTSNDD Q VGIW SG P APQCI	631
11	632	IPNK C TPN VENGILVS DNRSLFSLNEWEFRCPGFVWKGP	VKC QALNKWE PELPSCS R	693
12	694	V CQPPPE ILHGEH TPESHODNESPQEVYSCPEGYDLRGAA	S LHC T PQ GDW S PEAPRCA	752
13	753	V KSCDDFLGQLPHGRVLFPNL QLGAKVSFVCDGEGFLKGS	SVSHCV LV GMR SLWNSS VPVC EH	816
14	817	IF CPNPPA ILNGRH TGTPSGDIPYGKEISYTCDPHPD RGMT FNLIGE	STIRCTSDPHGN GVM SS P APRC ELSVRAG	892
15	893	HCKTPEQFPF ASPTIPINDFEFPVGTSLNYECRPGYF GKM F	S ISC LE N L VW SS VE DNCR R	952
16	953	KSCGPPPE PENGWHI NTDQF GSTVNYSCNEGFRLLIGSP	STT C LVSGNV TW DKK APIC EI	1014
17	1015	I SCEPPT ISNGDFYS NNRTSFHNGTWTYQCHTGP DGEQLFEVLGERS	IYCTSKDD Q VGVW SS P PPRC	1083
18	1084	ISTNKCTAPE VENA IRVPGNRSFFSLTEIRFRCPQGFVMVGS	T VOC QTNGRW G PKLPHCS R	1146
19	1147	V CQPPPE ILHGEH TLSHODNESPQEVYSCPEGYDLRGAA	S LHC T PQ GDW S PEAPRCT	1206
20	1207	V KSCDDFLGQLPHGRVLFPNL QLGAKVSFVCDGEGFLKGR	SASHCV LA GKM ALWNSS VPVC EQ	1269
21	1270	IF CPNPPA ILNGRH TGTPFGDIPYGKEISVACDTHPD RGMT FNLIGE	SSIRCTS D PQNGWV SS P APRC ELS	1341
22	1342	VP AACPHPPK IQNG HYIGGHVSLYLPQMTISYTCDPGYLLVGKG	FIFC T D Q GIW SQLD HYCKE	1404
23	1405	VN CSFPLFM NGISKELEMKVYHYGDYVTLKCEDGYTLEGSPW	SQ C QADDRWDP P LAKCTSR	1466

SUBSTITUTE SHEET



**FIG. 5 (cont.)**

23/60



**LHR**

B 1 KLKQTQTNASDFPIGTSLKYECRPEYYGRPFSITCLDNLVMSPKOVCKRKCKTPDPVNGMVHVITDIQVGSRI NYSCTTGHLIGHSSAECILSGNAHWSKPP 108  
 C 439 GHCAQPDHFLFA T  
 D 892 GHCKTPEQFPFASPTIPI DFEV N GFKM SE VENR GP EF INTF TV NEF SP TT LV NVT DK A 1011  
 B 109 CQRI PCGLPPTIANGDFISTNRENHYGSVVTYRCNPGSGGRKVFELVGEPSIYCTSNDDQVGISWGPAPQCIIPNKCTPPNVENGILVSDNRSLFSLNEVFEFCQPGFVMKGRPRVKC 228  
 C 559 L R  
 D 1012 EIS EP S YN TS NT QHT PD EQ L R K V S PR ST AE ARP GF TIR V SHT Q 1131  
 B 229 QALNKWPELPSCSRVCQPPDVLHAERTQDKONFSPGQEVFYSCPEGYDLRGAA SMRCTPQGDWSPAAPTCEVKSCDDFMGQLNGRVLFPVNLQLGAKVDFVCDEGFQLKGSSASYC 348  
 C 879 EIGHPSHQ LH ERA L PH L S R V H 798  
 D 1132 TNGR G K H EIGHLSHQ S L H ERT L PH LL S R R H 1251  
 B 349 VLAGMESLWSSVPVCEQIFCPSPPVIPNGRHTGKPLEVFPFGKAVNYTCDPHPDRTSFDLIGESTIRCTSDPQNGVWSSPARCGIL 438  
 C 799 V R N H NAL TSGDIY EIS MT N H ELSVRA 891  
 D 1252 KA NAL TFGDIY EISA T MT N S ELS 1341  
 B 1342 VPAACPHPPKIQNGHYIGGHVSLYLPGMTISYTCDPGYLLVGKGFIFCTDQGISQLDHYCKEVNCSFPLFMNGISKELEMKKVYHYGDYVTLKCEDGYTLEGSPWSCQADRDWDPPLA 1461  
 D 1462 KCTSRADALIVGTLSGTIFILLIFLSWILKHKRGNNAHENPKEVAIHLHSQGGSSVHPRTLQINEENSRVLP 1537

**FIG. 5**

22/60

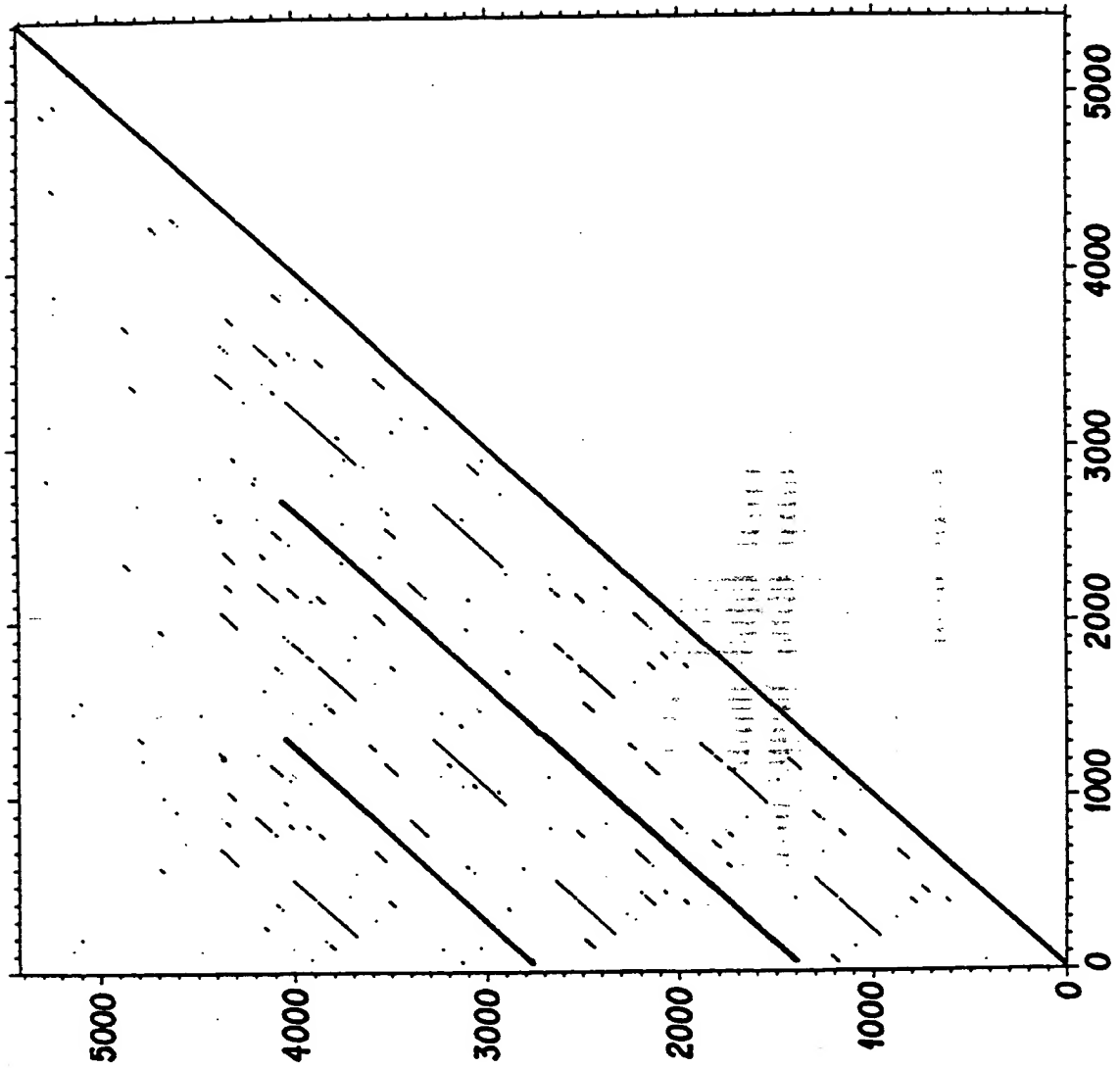


FIG. 4

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

21/60

4381 TGGCCAAATGTACCTCTCGTGCACATGATGCTCTCATAGTTGGCACTTTATCTGGTACGA 4440  
4441 TCTTCTTTAATTTTACTCATCATTTTCTCTCTTGGATAATTCTAAAGCACAGAAAAGGCA 4500  
4501 ATAATGCACATGAAAACCCCTAAAGAAGTGCTATCCATTACATTCTCAAGGAGGCAGCA 4560  
4561 GCGTTCATCCCGAACTCTGCAACAAATGAAGAAAATAGCAGGGTCCTTCCTTGACAAA 4620  
4621 GTACTATACAGCTGAAGAACATCTCGAATACAATTTTGGTGGGAAAGGAGCCAATTGATT 4680  
4681 TCAACAGAATCAGATCTGAGCTTCATAAAGTCTTTGAAGTGACTTCACAGAGACGCAGAC 4740  
4741 ATGTGCACTTGAAGATGCTGCCCTTCCCTGGTACCTAGCAAAGCTCCTGCCTCTTTGTG 4800  
4801 TGGTCACTGTGAACCCCCACCCTTCTGCCTCGTGCTAAACGCACACAGTATCTAGTCA 4860  
4861 GGGGAAAGACTGCATTTAGGAGATAGAAAATAGTTTGATTACTTAAAGGAATAAGGTG 4920  
4921 TTGCCTGGAATTTCTGGTTTGTAAAGTGGTCACTGTTCTTTTAAATATTTGTAATAT 4980  
4981 GGAATGGGCTCAGTAAGAAGAGCTTGAAAATGCAGAAAGTTATGAAAAATAAGTCACTT 5040  
5041 ATAATTATGCTACCTACTGATAACCACTCCTAATATTTTGATTCAATTTCTGCCTATCTT 5100  
5101 CTTTCACATATGTGTTTTTTTACATACGTACTTTTCCCCCTTAGTTTGTTTCTTTTAT 5160  
5161 TTTATAGAGCAGAACCTAGTCTTTTAAACAGTTAGAGTGAAATATATGCTATATCAGT 5220  
5221 TTTTACTTTCTCTAGGGAGAAAAATTAATTTACTAGAAAGGCATGAAATGATCATGGGAA 5280  
5281 GAGTGGTTAAGACTACTGAAGAGAAATATTTGAAATAAGATTCGATACTTCTTTTTT 5340  
5341 TTTTGAGATGGAGTCTGGCTCTGTCTCCAGGCTGGAGTGCAGTGGCGTAATCTCGGCTC 5400  
5401 ACTGCAACGTCCGCCTCCCG 5420

GTGCGTAACTTGCGTTGGATCTTTCCCATGTCTGCAAAAGCTTCTTATGGAATTA  
TTTCAAATGTGGGATATGAGAAACCTTTCTGAAAAGTGTTCCGATAGATGGAT

FIG. 3D

20/60

2881	AACCCTTCAATGGAATGGTGCATATAAACACAGATACACAGTTTGATCAACAGTTAATT	2940
2941	ATTCTTGTAATGAAGGGTTTCGACTCATTGGTTCCCATCTACTACTTGCTCGTCTCAG	3000
3001	GCAATAATGTCACATGGGATAAGAAGGCACCTATTTGTGAGATCATATCTTGTGAGCCAC	3060
3061	CTCCAACCATATCCAATGGAGACTTCTACAGCAACAATAGAACATCTTTTACAATGGAA	3120
3121	CGGTGGTAACTTACCAGTGCCACACTGGAACAGATGAGAACAGCTGTTTGAGCTGTGG	3180
3181	GAGAACGGTCAATATATTGCACCAGCAAAGATGATCAAGTGGTGTGTGGAGCAGCCCTC	3240
3241	CCCCTCGGTGTATTTCTACTAATAAATGCACAGCTCCAGAAGTTGAAAAAGCAATTAGAG	3300
3301	TACCAGGAAACAGGAGTTTCTTTCCCTCAGTGAGATCATCAGATTTAGATGTCAGCCCG	3360
3361	GGTTTGTCAATGGTAGGGTCCACACTGTGCAGTGCCAGACCAATGGCAGATGGGGGCCCA	3420
3421	AGCTGCCACACTGCTCCAGGGTGTGTCAGCCGCTCCAGAAATCCTGCAATGGTGAGCATA	3480
3481	CCCTAAGCCATCAGGACAACTTTTACCTGGGCAGGAAGTGTCTACAGCTGTGAGCCCA	3540
3541	GCTATGACCTCAGAGGGGCTGCGTCTCTGCACTGCACGCCCCAGGGAGACTGGAGCCCTG	3600
3601	AAGCCCTAGATGTACAGTGAAATCCTGTGATGACTTCCTGGGCCAACTCCCTCATGGCC	3660
3661	GTGTGCTACTTCCACTTAATCTCCAGCTTGGGGCAAAGGTGTCCTTTGTTTGGCATGAAG	3720
3721	GGTTCGATTAAAAGGCAGGTCTGCTAGTCATTGTGTCTTGCTGGAATGAAAGCCCTTT	3780
3781	GGAATAGCAGTGTTCAGTGTGTGAACAAATCTTTGTCCAAATCCTCCAGCTATCCTTA	3840
3841	ATGGGAGACACACAGGAACCTCCTTTGGAGATATTCCTATGGAAAAGAAATATCTTACG	3900
3901	CATGCGACACCCACCCAGACAGAGGGATGACCTTCAACCTCATTGGGGAGAGCTCCATCC	3960
3961	GCTGCACAAGTGACCCTCAAGGGAATGGGGTTTGGAGCAGCCCTGCCCTCGCTGTGAAC	4020
4021	TTTCTGTTCTGCTGCCTGCCACATCCACCAAGATCCAAACGGGCATTACATTGGAG	4080
4081	GACACGTATCTCTATATCTTCTGGGATGACAATCAGCTACACTTGTGACCCCGGCTACC	4140
4141	TGTTAGTGGGAAAGGGCTTCATTTCTGTACAGACCAGGGAATCTGGAGCCAATTGGATC	4200
4201	ATTATTGCAAAGAAGTAAATGTAGCTTCCCACTGTTTATGAATGGAATCTCGAAGGAGT	4260
4261	TAGAAATGAAAAAGTATACTACTATGGAGATTATGTGACTTGAAGTGTGAAGATGGGT	4320
4321	ATACTCTGGAAGGCAGTCCCTGGAGCCAGTGCCAGGCGGATGACAGATGGGACCCTCCTC	4380

FIG.3C

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

19/60

1501	AATCATGTAA <sup>•</sup> AACTCCTCC <sup>•</sup> AGATCC <sup>•</sup> AGTGAA <sup>•</sup> TGGCATGG <sup>•</sup> TGCATGTGAT <sup>•</sup> CACAGACATCC <sup>•</sup>	1560
1561	AGGTTGGATCC <sup>•</sup> AGAATCAA <sup>•</sup> CTATTCT <sup>•</sup> TGTACTAC <sup>•</sup> AGGGCACC <sup>•</sup> CGACTCAT <sup>•</sup> TGGTCACTCAT <sup>•</sup>	1620
1621	CTGCTGAATGTATCCTCTC <sup>•</sup> AGGCAATACT <sup>•</sup> TGCCATT <sup>•</sup> TGGAGCAG <sup>•</sup> AAGCGCCAATT <sup>•</sup> TGTC <sup>•</sup>	1680
1681	AACGAATTCCTTGTGGGCT <sup>•</sup> ACCCCAACC <sup>•</sup> ATCGCCAATGG <sup>•</sup> AGATTTCA <sup>•</sup> TAGCACCAACA <sup>•</sup>	1740
1741	GAGAGAATTTCACTATGGATCAGTGGTGACCTACCGCTGCAATCTTGGAGCAGAGGGA <sup>•</sup>	1800
1801	GAAAGGTGTTTGAGCTTGTGGGTGAGCCCTCCATATACTGCACCAGCAATGACGATCAAG <sup>•</sup>	1860
1861	TGGGCATCTGGAGCGGCCC <sup>•</sup> CGCCCTCAGTGCATTATACCTAACAAATGCACGCCTCCA <sup>•</sup>	1920
1921	ATGTGGAAAATGGAATATTGGTATCTGACAACAGAAGCTTATTTTCCTTAAATGAAGTTG <sup>•</sup>	1980
1981	TGGAGTTTAGGTGTCAGCCTGGCTTTGTCA <sup>•</sup> TGAAAGGACCC <sup>•</sup> CGCCGTGTGAAGTGCCAGG <sup>•</sup>	2040
2041	CCCTGAACAAATGGGAGCCAGAGTTACCAAGCTGCTCCAGGGTGTGTCAGCCGCTCCAG <sup>•</sup>	2100
2101	AAATCCTGCATGGTGAGCATACCCCAAGCCATCAGGACA <sup>•</sup> ACTTTTCACCTGGGCAGGAAG <sup>•</sup>	2160
2161	TGTTCTACAGCTGTGAGCCTGGCTATGACCTCAGAGGGGCTGCGTCTCTGCACTGCACAC <sup>•</sup>	2220
2221	CCCAGGGAGACTGGAGCCC <sup>•</sup> TGAAGCCCCGAGATGTGCAAGTGAATCCTGTGATGACTTCT <sup>•</sup>	2280
2281	TGGGTCAACTCCCTCATGGCCGTGTGCTATTTCCACTTAATCTCCAGCTTGGGGCAAAGG <sup>•</sup>	2340
2341	TGTCCTTTGTCTGTGATGAAGGGTTTCGCTTAAAGGGCAGTTCGTTAGTCA <sup>•</sup> TGTGTCT <sup>•</sup>	2400
2401	TGGTTGGAATGAGAAGCCTTTGGAATAACAGTGTTCCTGTGTGTGAACATATCTTTTGT <sup>•</sup>	2460
2461	CAAATCCTCCAGCTATCCTTAATGGGAGACACACAGGA <sup>•</sup> ACTCCCTCTGGAGATATTCCCT <sup>•</sup>	2520
2521	ATGGAAAAGAAATATCTTACACATGTGACCCCCACCCAGACAGAGGGATGACCTTCAACC <sup>•</sup>	2580
2581	TCATTGGGGAGAGCACCATCCGCTGCACAAGTGACCCTCATGGGAATGGGGTTTGAGCA <sup>•</sup>	2640
2641	GCCCTGCCCCTCGCTGTGA <sup>•</sup> ACTTTCTGTTCTGTCTGGTCACTGTAAACCCCAGAGCAGT <sup>•</sup>	2700
2701	TTCCATTGCCAGTCCTACGATCCCAATTAA <sup>•</sup> TGACTT <sup>•</sup> TGAGTTTCCAGT <sup>•</sup> CGGGACATCT <sup>•</sup>	2760
2761	TGAATTATGAATGCCGTCCTGGGTATTTGGGAAAATGTTCTCTATCTCCTGCCTAGAAA <sup>•</sup>	2820
2821	ACTTGGTCTGGTCAAGTGTGAAGACAAC <sup>•</sup> TGTAGACGAAAATCATGTGGACCTCCACCAG <sup>•</sup>	2880

FIG. 3B

18/60

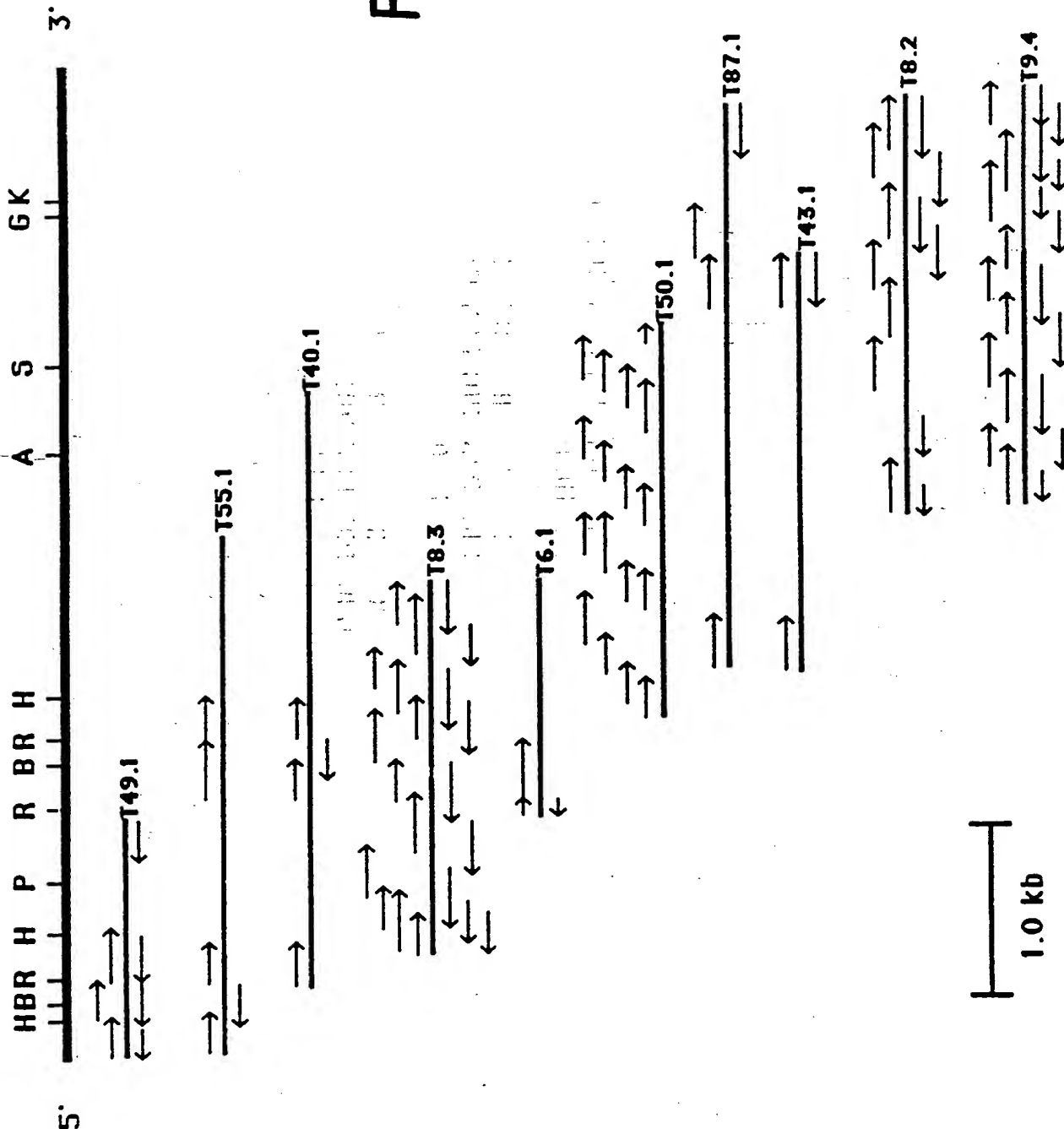
1 CCAAGTTGAAAACCCAAACCAATGCATCTGACTTTCCCAATTGGGACATCTTTAAAGTACG 60  
61 AATGCCGTCCTGAGTACTACGGGAGGCCAATTCTCTATCACATGTCTAGATAACCTGGTCT 120  
121 GGTCAAGTCCCAAAGATGTCTGTAAACGTAAATCATGTAAAACTCCTCCAGATCCAGTGA 187  
181 ATGGCATGGTGCATGTGATCACAGACATCCAGGTTGGATCCAGAATCAACTATTCTTGTA 240  
241 CTACAGGGCACCAGACTCATGGTCACTCATCTGCTGAATGTATCCTCTCGGGCAATGCTG 300  
301 CCCATTGGAGCACGAAGCCGCCAATTGTCAACGAATTCCTTGTTGGGCTACCCCCACCA 360  
361 TCGCCAATGGAGATTTCAATTAGCACCAACAGAGAGAATTTTCACTATGGATCAGTGGTGA 420  
421 CCTACCGCTGCAATCCTGGAAGCGGAGGGAGAAAGGTGTTTGAGCTGTGGGTGAGCCCT 480  
481 CCATATACTGCACCAGCAATGACGATCAAGTGGGCATCTGGAGCGGCCCGGCCCTCAGT 540  
541 GCATTATACCTAACAAATGCACGCCTCCAAATGTGGAAAATGGAATATTGGTATCTGACA 600  
601 ACAGAAGCTTATTTTCCTTAAATGAAGTTGTGGAGTTTAGGTGTCAGCCTGGCTTTGTCA 660  
661 TGAAAGGACCCCGCCGTGTGAAGTGCCAGGCCCTGAACAAATGGGAGCCCGAGCTACCAA 720  
721 GCTGCTCCAGGGTATGTACGCCACCTCCAGATGTCTGCATGCTGAGCGTACCCAAAGGG 780  
781 ACAAGGACAACCTTTTACC CGGGCAGGAAGTGTCTACAGCTGTGAGCCCGGCTATGACC 840  
841 TCAGAGGGGCTGCGTCTATGCGCTGCACACCCCAGGGAGACTGGAGCCCCTGAGCCCCCA 900  
901 CATGTGAAGTGAAATCCTGTGATGACTTCATGGGCCAACTTCTTAATGGCCGTGTGCTAT 960  
961 TTCCAGTAAATCTCCAGCTTGAGCAAAAAGTGGATTTGTTTGATGAAGGATTTCAAT 1020  
1021 TAAAAGGCAGCTCTGCTAGTTATTGTGTCTGGCTGGAATGGAAAGCCTTTGGAATAGCA 1080  
1081 GTGTTCCAGTGTGTGAACAAATCTTTGTCCAAGTCCTCCAGTTATTCTAATGGGAGAC 1140  
1141 ACACAGGAAAACCTCTGGAAGTCTTTCCCTTTGGAAAAGCAGTAAATTACATGCGACC 1200  
1201 CCCACCCAGACAGAGGGACGAGCTTCGACCTCATGGAGAGAGCACCATCGCTGCACAA 1260  
1261 GTGACCCTCAAGGGAATGGGGTTTGAGCAGCCCTGCCCCTCGCTGTGGAAATTCTGGGTC 1320  
1321 ACTGTCAAGCCCCAGATCAATTTCTGTTTGCCAAGTTGAAAACCCAAACCAATGCATCTG 1380  
1381 ACTTTCCCAATTGGGACATCTTTAAAGTACGAATGCCGTCCTGAGTACTACGGGAGGCCAT 1440  
1441 TCTCTATCACATGTCTAGATAACCTGGTCTGGTCAAGTCCCAAAGATGTCTGTAAACGTA 1500

FIG. 3A

SUBSTITUTE SHEET



17/60



SUBSTITUTE SHEET

## FIG. 1P

CTA ATA TTT TGA TTC ATT TTC TGC CTA TCT TCT TTC ACA TAT GTG TTT TTT TAC ATA CGT 6630 6660

ACT TTT CCC CCC TTA GTT TGT TTC CTT TTA TTT TAT AGA GCA GAA CCC TAG TCT TTT AAA 6690 6720

CAG TTT AGA GTG AAA TAT ATG CTA TAT CAG TTT TTA CTT TCT CTA GGG AGA AAA ATT AAT 6750 6780

16/60

TTA CTA GAA AGG CAT GAA ATG ATC ATG GGA AGA GTG GTT AAG ACT ACT GAA GAG AAA TAT 6810 6840

TTG GAA AAT AAG ATT TCG ATA TCT TCT TTT TTT TTG AGA TGG AGT CTG GCT CTG TCT CCC 6870 6900

AGG CTG GAG TGC AGT GGC GTA ATC TCG GCT CAC TGC AAC GTC CGC CTC CCG 6930

## FIG.10

crl.seq

6330 TGG TAC CTA GCA AAG CTC CTG CCT CTT TGT GTG CGT CAC TGT GAA ACC CCC ACC CTT CTG 6360

6390 CCT CGT GCT AAA CGC ACA CAG TAT CTA GTC AGG GGA AAA GAC TGC ATT TAG GAG ATA GAA 6420 15/60

6450 AAT AGT TTG GAT TAC TTA AAG GAA TAA GGT GTT GCC TGG AAT TTC TGG TTT GTA AGG TGG 6480

6510 TCA CTG TTC TTT TTT AAA ATA TTT GTA ATA TGG AAT GGG CTC AGT AAG AAG AGC TTG GAA 6540

6570 AAT GCA GAA AGT TAT GAA AAA TAA GTC ACT TAT AAT TAT GCT ACC TAC TGA TAA CCA CTC 6600

## FIG.1N

5850 GAT TAT GTG ACT TTG AAG TGT GAA GAT GGG TAT ACT CTG GAA GGC AGT CCC TGG AGC CAG 5880  
 D Y V T L K C E D G Y T L E G S P W S Q  
 5910 TGC CAG GCG GAT GAC AGA TGG GAC CCT CCT CTG GCC AAA TGT ACC TCT CGT GCA CAT GAT 5940  
 C Q A D D R W D P P L A K C T S R A H D  
 5970 GCT CTC ATA GTT GGC ACT TTA TCT GGT ACG ATC TTC TTT ATT TTA CTC ATC ATT TTC CTC 6000  
 A L I V G T L S G T I F I L L I I F L  
 6030 TCT TGG ATA ATT CTA AAG CAC AGA AAA GGC AAT AAT GCA CAT GAA AAC CCT AAA GAA GTG 6060 14/60  
 S W I I L K H R K G N N A H E N P K E V 60  
 6090 GCT ATC CAT TTA CAT TCT CAA GGA GGC AGC AGC GTT CAT CCC CGA ACT CTG CAA ACA AAT 6120  
 A I H L H S Q G G S S V H P R T L Q T N  
 6150 GAA GAA AAT AGC AGG GTC CTT CCT TGA CAA AGT ACT ATA CAG CTG AAG AAC ATC TCG AAT 6180  
 E N S R V L P U  
 6210 ACA ATT TTG GTG GGA AAG GAG CCA ATT GAT TTC AAC AGA ATC AGA TCT GAG CTT CAT AAA 6240  
 6270 GTC TTT GAA GTG ACT TCA CAG AGA CGC AGA CAT GTG CAC TTG AAG ATG CTG CCC CTT CCC 6300

## FIG. 1M

crl.seq

```

5430      GAT ATT CCC TAT GGA AAA GAA ATA TCT TAC GCA TGC GAC ACC CAC CCA GAC AGA GGG ATG
          D I P Y G K E I S Y A C D T H P D R G M      5460

5490      ACC TTC AAC CTC ATT GGG GAG AGC TCC ATC CGC TGC ACA AGT GAC CCT CAA GGG AAT GGG
          T F N L I G E S S I R C T S D P Q G N G      5520

5550      GTT TGG AGC AGC CCT GCC CCT CGC TGT GAA CTT TCT GTT CCT GCT GCC TGC CCA CAT CCA
          V W S S P A P R C E L S V P A A C P H P      5580

5610      CCC AAG ATC CAA AAC GGG CAT TAC ATT GGA GGA CAC GTA TCT CTA TAT CTT CCT GGG ATG
          P K I Q N G G H Y I G G G H V S L Y L P G M      5640 13/60

5670      ACA ATC AGC TAC ACT TGT GAC CCC GGC TAC CTG TTA GTG GGA AAG GGC TTC ATT TTC TGT
          T I S Y T C D P G Y L L V G K G F I F C      5700

5730      ACA GAC CAG GGA ATC TGG AGC CAA TTG GAT CAT TAT TGC AAA GAA GTA AAT TGT AGC TTC
          T D Q G I W S Q L D H Y C K E V N C S F      5760

5790      CCA CTG TTT ATG AAT GGA ATC TCG AAG GAG TTA GAA ATG AAA AAA GTA TAT CAC TAT GGA
          P L F M N G I S K E L E M K K V Y H Y G      5820

```

## FIG. 1L

4950 4980  
 CAG TGC CAG ACC AAT GGC AGA TGG GGG CCC AAG CTG CCA CAC TGC TCC AGG GTG TGT CAG  
 Q C Q T N G R G P K L P H C S R V C Q

5010 5040  
 CCG CCT CCA GAA ATC CTG CAT GGT GAG CAT ACC CTA AGC CAT CAG GAC AAC TTT TCA CCT  
 P P E I L H G E H T L S H Q D N F S P

5070 5100  
 GGG CAG GAA GTG TTC TAC AGC TGT TGT GAG CCC AGC TAT GAC CTC AGA GGG GCT GCG TCT CTG  
 G Q E V F Y S C E P S Y D L R G A A S L

5130 5160 12/60  
 CAC TGC ACG CCC CAG GGA GAC TGG AGC CCT GAA GCC CCT AGA TGT ACA GTG AAA TCC TGT  
 H C T P Q G G D W S P E A P R C T V K S C

5190 5220  
 GAT GAC TTC CTG GGC CAA CTC CCT CAT GGC CGT GTG CTA CTT CCA CTT AAT CTC CAG CTT  
 D D F L G Q L P H G R V L L P L N L Q L

5250 5280  
 GGG GCA AAG GTG TCC TTT GTT TGC GAT GAA GGG TTC CGA TTA AAA GGC AGG TCT GCT AGT  
 G A K V S F V C D E G G F R L K G R S A S

5310 5340  
 CAT TGT GTC TTG GCT GGA ATG AAA GCC CTT TGG AAT AGC AGT GTT CCA GTG TGT GAA CAA  
 H C V L A G M K A L W N S S V P V C E Q

5370 5400  
 ATC TTT TGT CCA AAT CCT CCA GCT ATC CTT AAT GGG AGA CAC ACA GGA ACT CCC TTT GGA  
 I F C P N P A I L N G R H T G T P F G

## FIG. 1 K

crl.seq

4530 GGT TCC CCA TCT ACT ACT TGT CTC GTC TCA GGC AAT AAT GTC ACA TGG GAT AAG AAG GCA 4560  
 G S P S T T C L V S G N V T W D K K A  
 4590 CCT ATT TGT GAG ATC ATA TCT TGT GAG CCA CCT CCA ACC ATA TCC AAT GGA GAC TTC TAC 4620  
 P I C E I I S C E P P P T I S N G D F Y  
 4650 AGC AAC AAT AGA ACA TCT TTT CAC AAT GGA ACG GTG GTA ACT TAC CAG TGC CAC ACT GGA 4680  
 S N N R T S F H N G T V V T Y Q C H T G  
 4710 CCA GAT GGA GAA CAG CTG TTT GAG CTT GTG GGA GAA CGG TCA ATA TAT TGC ACC AGC AAA 4740  
 P D G E Q L F E L V G G E R S I Y C T S K  
 4770 GAT GAT CAA GTT GGT GTT TGG AGC AGC CCT CCC CCT CGG TGT ATT TCT ACT AAT AAA TGC 4800  
 D D Q V G V W S S P P P R C I S T N K C  
 4830 ACA GCT CCA GAA GTT GAA AAT GCA ATT AGA GTA CCA GGA AAC AGG AGT TTC TTT TCC CTC 4860  
 T A P E V E N A I R V P G N R S F S L  
 4890 ACT GAG ATC ATC AGA TTT AGA TGT CAG CCC GGG TTT GTC ATG GTA GGG TCC CAC ACT GTG 4920  
 T E I I R F R C Q P G G F V M V G S H T V

H/60

## FIG. 1J

4050 CAC ACA GGA ACT CCC TCT GGA GAT ATT CCC TAT GGA AAA GAA ATA TCT TAC ACA TGT GAC  
H T G T P S G D I P Y G K E I S Y T C D 4080

4110 CCC CAC CCA GAC AGA GGG ATG ACC TTC AAC CTC ATT GGG GAG AGC ACC ATC CGC TGC ACA  
P H P D R G M T F N L I G E S T I R C T 4140

4170 AGT GAC CCT CAT GGG AAT GGG GTT TGG AGC AGC CCT GCC CCT CGC TGT GAA CTT TCT GTT  
S D P H G N G V W S S P A P R C E L S V 4200

4230 CGT GCT GGT CAC TGT AAA ACC CCA GAG CAG TTT CCA TTT GCC AGT CCT CGC ATC CCA ATT  
R A G H C K T P E Q F P F A S P T I P I 4260

4290 AAT GAC TTT GAG TTT CCA GTC GGG ACA TCT TTG AAT TAT GAA TGC CGT CCT GGG TAT TTT  
N D F E F F P V G T S L N Y E C R P G Y F 4320

4350 GGG AAA ATG TTC TCT ATC TCC TGC CTA GAA AAC TTG GTC TGG TCA AGT GTT GAA GAC AAC  
G K M F S I S C L E N L V W S S V E D N 4380

4410 TGT AGA CGA AAA TCA TGT GGA CCT CCA CCA GAA CCC TTC AAT GGA ATG GTG CAT ATA AAC  
C R R K S C G P P P E P F N G M V H I N 4440

4470 ACA GAT ACA CAG TTT GGA TCA ACA GTT AAT TAT TCT TGT AAT GAA GGG TTT CGA CTC ATT  
T D T Q F G S T V N Y S C N E G F R L I 4500

10/60



## FIG. 11

crl.seq

3630 AGC TGC TCC AGG GTG TGT CAG CCG CCT CCA GAA ATC CTG CAT GGT GAG CAT ACC CCA AGC  
 S C S R V C Q P P P E I L H G E H T P S 3660  
 3690 CAT CAG GAC AAC TTT TCA CCT GGG CAG GAA GTG TTC TAC AGC TGT GAG CCT GGC TAT GAC  
 H Q D N F S P G Q E V F Y S C E P G Y D 3720  
 3750 CTC AGA GGG GCT GCG TCT CTG CAC TGC ACA CCC CAG GGA GAC TGG AGC CCT GAA GCC CCG  
 L R G A A S L H C T P Q G D W S P E A P 3780  
 3810 AGA TGT GCA GTG AAA TCC TGT GAT GAC TTC TTG GGT CAA CTC CCT CAT GGC CGT GTG CTA  
 R C A V K S C D D F L G Q L P H G R V L 3840  
 3870 TTT CCA CTT AAT CTC CAG CTT GGG GCA AAG GTG TCC TTT GTC TGT GAT GAA GGG TTT CGC  
 F P L N L Q L G A K V S F V C D E G F R 3900  
 3930 TTA AAG GGC AGT TCC GTT AGT AGT CAT TGT GTC TTG GTT GGA ATG AGA AGC CTT TGG AAT AAC  
 L K G S S V S H C V L V G M R S L W N N 3960  
 3990 AGT GTT CCT GTG TGT GAA CAT ATC TTT TGT CCA AAT CCT CCA GCT ATC CTT AAT GGG AGA  
 S V P V C E H I F C P N P P A I L N G R 4020

9/60

## FIG. 1H

3150  
 ACT ACA GGG CAC CGA CTC ATT GGT CAC TCA TCT GCT GAA TGT ATC CTC TCA GGC AAT ACT  
 T T G H R L I G H S S A E C I L S G N T 3180

3210  
 GCC CAT TGG AGC ACG AAG CCG CCA ATT TGT CAA CGA ATT CCT TGT GGG CTA CCC CCA ACC  
 A H W S T K P P I C Q R I P C G L P P T 3240

3270  
 ATC GCC AAT GGA GAT TTC ATT AGC ACC AAC AGA GAG AAT TTT CAC TAT GGA TCA GTG GTG  
 I A N G D F I S T N R E N F H Y G S V V 3300

3330  
 ACC TAC CGC TGC AAT CTT GGA AGC AGA GGG AGA AAG GTG TTT GAG CTT GTG GGT GAG CCC  
 T Y R C N L G S R G R K V F E L V G E P 3360

3390  
 TCC ATA TAC TGC ACC AGC AAT GAC GAT CAA GTG GGC ATC TGG AGC GGC CCC GCC CCT CAG  
 S I Y C T S N D D Q V G I W S G P A P Q 3420

3450  
 TGC ATT ATA CCT AAC AAA TGC ACG CCT CCA AAT GTG GAA AAT GGA ATA TTG GTA TCT GAC  
 C I I P N K C T P P N V E N G I L V S D 3480

3510  
 AAC AGA AGC TTA TTT TCC TTA AAT GAA GTT GTG GAG TTT AGG TGT CAG CCT GGC TTT GTC  
 N R S L F S L N E V V E F R C Q P G F V 3540

3570  
 ATG AAA GGA CCC CGC CGT GTG AAG TGC CAG GCC CTG AAC AAA TGG GAG CCA GAG TTA CCA  
 M K G P R R V K C Q A L N K W E P E L P 3600

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

crl.seq

## FIG. 1G

```

2730      TTT GGA AAA GCA GTA AAT TAC ACA TGC GAC CCC CAC CCA GAC AGA GGG ACG AGC TTC GAC
      F  G  K  A  A  V  N  Y  T  C  D  P  H  P  D  R  G  T  S  F  D
2760

2790      CTC ATT GGA GAG AGC ACC ATC CGC TGC ACA AGT GAC CCT CAA GGG AAT GGG GTT TGG AGC
      L  I  G  E  S  T  I  R  C  T  S  D  P  Q  G  N  G  V  W  S
2820

2850      AGC CCT GCC CCT CGC TGT GGA ATT CTG GGT CAC TGT CAA GCC CCA GAT CAT TTT CTG TTT
      S  P  A  P  R  C  G  I  L  G  H  C  Q  A  P  D  H  F  L  F
2880

2910      GCC AAG TTG AAA ACC CAA ACC AAT GCA TCT GAC TTT CCC ATT GGG ACA TCT TTA AAG TAC
      A  K  L  K  T  Q  T  N  A  S  D  F  P  I  G  T  S  L  K  Y
2940

2970      GAA TGC CGT CCT GAG TAC TAC GGG AGG CCA TTC TCT ATC ACA TGT CTA GAT AAC CTG GTC
      E  C  R  P  E  Y  Y  G  R  P  F  S  I  T  C  L  D  N  L  V
3000

3030      TGG TCA AGT CCC AAA GAT GTC TGT AAA CGT AAA TCA TGT AAA ACT CCT CCA GAT CCA GTG
      W  S  S  P  K  D  V  C  K  R  K  S  C  K  T  P  P  D  P  V
3060

3090      AAT GGC ATG GTG CAT GTG ATC ACA GAC ATC CAG GTT GGA TCC AGA ATC AAC TAT TCT TGT
      N  G  M  V  H  V  I  T  D  I  Q  V  G  S  R  I  N  Y  S  C
3120

```

## FIG. 1F

2250 GCC CTG AAC AAA TGG GAG CCG GAG CTA CCA AGC TGC TCC AGG GTA TGT CAG CCA CCT CCA  
 A L N K W E P E L P S C S R V C Q P P P  
 2280  
 2310 GAT GTC CTG CAT GCT GAG CGT ACC CAA AGG GAC AAG GAC AAC TTT TCA CCC GGG CAG GAA  
 D V L H A E R T Q R D K D N F S P G Q E  
 2340  
 2370 GTG TTC TAC AGC TGT GAG CCC GGC TAT GAC CTC AGA GGG GCT GCG TCT ATG CGC TGC ACA  
 V F Y S C E P G Y D L R G A A S M R C T  
 2400  
 2430 CCC CAG GGA GAC TGG AGC CCT GCA GCC CCC ACA TGT GAA GTG AAA TCC TGT GAT GAC TTC  
 P Q G D W S P A A P T C E V K S C D D F F  
 2460  
 2490 ATG GGC CAA CTT CTT AAT GGC CGT GTG CTA TTT CCA GTA AAT CTC CAG CTT GGA GCA AAA  
 M G Q L L N G R V L F P V N L Q L G A K  
 2520  
 2550 GTG GAT TTT GTT TGT GAT GAA GGA TTT CAA TTA AAA GGC AGC TCT GCT AGT TAT TGT GTC  
 V D F V C D E G F Q L K G S S A S Y C V  
 2580  
 2610 TTG GCT GGA ATG GAA AGC CTT TGG AAT AGC AGT GTT CCA GTG TGT GAA CAA ATC TTT TGT  
 L A G M E S L W N S S V P V C E Q I F C  
 2640  
 2670 CCA AGT CCT CCA GTT ATT CCT AAT GGG AGA CAC ACA GGA AAA CCT CTG GAA GTC TTT CCC  
 P S P P V I P N G R H T G K P L E V F P  
 2700

## FIG. 1E

cr1.seq

1830 TCT GCT GAA TGT ATC CTC TCG GGC AAT GCT GCC CAT TGG AGC ACG AAG CCG CCA ATT TGT  
 S A E C I L S G N A A H W S T K P P I C 1860  
 1890 CAA CGA ATT CCT TGT TGT GGG CTA CCC CCC ACC ATC GCC AAT GGA GAT TTC ATT AGC ACC AAC  
 Q R I P C G L P P T I A N G D F I S T N 1920  
 1950 AGA GAG AAT TTT CAC TAT GGA TCA GTG GTG ACC TAC CGC TGC AAT CCT GGA AGC GGA GGG  
 R E N F H Y G S V V T Y R C N P G S G G 1980  
 2010 AGA AAG GTG TTT GAG CTT GTG GGT GAG CCC TCC ATA TAC TGC ACC AGC AAT GAC GAT CAA  
 R K V F E L V G E P S I Y C T S N D D Q 2040  
 2070 GTG GGC ATC TGG AGC GGC CCG GGC CCT CAG TGC ATT ATA CCT AAC AAA TGC ACG CCT CCA  
 V G I W S G G P A P Q C I I P N K C T P P 2100  
 2130 AAT GTG GAA AAT GGA ATA TTG GTA TCT GAC AAC AGA AGC TTA TTT TCC TTA AAT GAA GTT  
 N V E N G I L V S D N R S L F S L N E V 2160  
 2190 GTG GAG TTT AGG TGT CAG CCT GGC TTT GTC ATG AAA GGA CCC CGC CGT GTG AAG TGC CAG  
 V E F R C Q P G G F V M K G P R R V K C Q 2220

5/60

## FIG. 1D

1410  
 CCC CAC CCA GAC AGA GGG ACG AGC TTC GAC CTC ATT GGA GAG AGC ACC ATC CGC TGC ACA  
 P H P D R G T S F D L I G E S T I R C T 1440

1470  
 AGT GAC CCT CAA GGG AAT GGG GTT TGG AGC AGC CCT GCC CCT CGC TGT GGA ATT CTG GGT  
 S D P Q G G N G V W S S P A P R C G I L G 1500

1530  
 CAC TGT CAA GCC CCA GAT CAT TTT CTG TTT GCC AAG TTG AAA ACC CAA ACC AAT GCA TCT  
 H C Q A P D H F L F A K L K T Q T N A S 1560

1590  
 GAC TTT CCC ATT GGG ACA TCT TTA AAG TAC GAA TGC CGT CCT GAG TAC TAC GGG AGG CCA  
 D F P I G T S L K Y E C R P E Y Y G R P 1620

1650  
 TTC TCT ATC ACA TGT CTA GAT AAC CAT GTC TGG TCA AGT CCC AAA GAT GTC TGT AAA CGT  
 F S I T C L D N L V W S S S P K D V C K R 1680

1710  
 AAA TCA TGT AAA ACT CCT CCA GAT CCA GTG AAT GGC ATG GTG CAT GTG ATC ACA GAC ATC  
 K S C K T P P D P V N G M V H V I T D I 1740

1770  
 CAG GTT GGA TCC AGA ATC AAC TAT TCT TGT ACT ACA GGG CAC CGA CTC ATT GGT CAC TCA  
 Q V G S R I N Y S C T T G G H R L I G H S 1800

## FIG. 1C

cf1.seq

930  
 AGC TGC TCC AGG GTA TGT CAG CCA CCT CCA GAT GTC CTG CAT GCT GAG CGT ACC CAA AGG 960  
 S C S R V C Q P P P D V L H A E R T Q R

990  
 GAC AAG GAC AAC TTT TCA CCT GGG CAG GAA GTG TTC TAC AGC TGT GAG CCC GGC TAC GAC 1020  
 D K D N F S P G Q E V F Y S C E P G Y D

1050  
 CTC AGA GGG GCT GCG TCT ATG CGC TGC ACA CCC CAG GGA GAC TGG AGC CCT GCA GCC CCC 1080  
 L R G A A S M R C T P Q G D W S P A A P

1110  
 ACA TGT GAA GTG AAA TCC TGT GAT GAC TTC ATG GGC CAA CTT CTT AAT GGC CGT GTG CTA 1140<sup>3</sup>  
 T C E V K A A TCC TGT GAT GAC TTC ATG GGC CAA CTT CTT AAT GGC CGT GTG CTA<sup>3</sup> 8

1170  
 TTT CCA GTA AAT CTC CAG CTT GGA GCA AAA GTG GAT TTT GTT TGT GAT GAA GGA TTT CAA 1200  
 F P V N L Q L G A K V D F V C D E G F Q

1230  
 TTA AAA GGC AGC TCT GCT AGT TAC TGT GTC TTG GCT GGA ATG GAA AGC CTT TGG AAT AGC 1260  
 L K G S S A S Y C V L A G M E S L W N S

1290  
 AGT GTT CCA GTG TGT GAA CAA ATC TTT TGT CCA AGT CCT CCA GTT ATT CCT AAT GGG AGA 1320  
 S V P V C E Q I F C P S P P V I P N G R

1350  
 CAC ACA GGA AAA CCT CTG GAA GTC TTT CCC TTT GGA AAA GCA GTA AAT TAC ACA TGC GAC 1380  
 H T G K K P L E V F P F G K A V N Y T C D

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

## FIG. 1B

450 ACT AAA GGA TAC CGA CTC ATT GGT TCC TCG TCT GCC ACA TGC ATC ATC TCA GGT GAT ACT 480  
 T K G Y R L I G S S A T C I I S G D T  
 510 GTC ATT TGG GAT AAT GAA ACA CCT ATT TGT GAC AGA ATT CCT TGT GGG CTA CCC CCC ACC 540  
 V I W D N E T P I C D R I P C G L P P T  
 570 ATC ACC AAT GGA GAT TTC ATT AGC ACC AAC AGA GAG AAT TTT CAC TAT GGA TCA GTG GTG 600  
 I T N G D F I I S T N R E N F H Y G S V  
 630 ACC TAC CGC TGC AAT CCT GGA AGC GGA GGG AGA AAG GTG TTT GAG CTT GTG GGT GAG CCC 660  
 T Y R C N P G S G G R K V F E L V G E P  
 690 TCC ATA TAC TGC ACC AGC AAT GAC GAT CAA GTG GGC ATC TGG AGC GGC CCC GCC CCT CAG 720  
 S I Y C T S N D D Q V G I W S G P A P Q  
 750 TGC ATT ATA CCT AAC AAA TGC ACG CCT CCA AAT GTG GAA AAT GGA ATA TTG GTA TCT GAC 780  
 C I I P N K C T P P N V E N G I L V S D  
 810 AAC AGA AGC TTA TTT TCC TTA AAT GAA GTT GTG GAG TTT AGG TGT CAG CCT GGC TTT GTG 840  
 N R S L F S L N E V V E F R C Q P G F V  
 870 ATG AAA GGA CCC CGC CGT GTG AAG TGC CAG GCC CTG AAC AAA TGG GAG CCG GAG CTA CCA 900  
 M K G P R R V K C Q A L N K W E P E L P



## FIG. 1A

Fcrl.seq

```

30      CGT GGT TTG TAG ATG TGC TTG GGG AGA ATG GGG GCC TCT TCT CCA AGA AGC CCG GAG CCT
      [M] G A S S P R S P E P
60
90      GTC GGG CCG CCG GCG CTC CCC GGT CTC CCC TTC TGC TGC GGA GGA TCC CTG CTG GCG GTT GTG
      V G P P A P G L P F C C G G S L L A V V
120
150     GTG CTG CTT GCG CTG CCG GTG GCC TGG GGT CAA TGC AAT GCC CCA GAA TGG CTT CCA TTT
      V L L A L P V A W [G] Q C N A P E W L P F
180
210     GCC AGG CCT ACC AAC CTA ACT GAT GAG TTT GAG TTT CCC ATT GGG ACA TAT CTG AAC TAT
      A R P T N L T D E F E F P I G T Y L N Y
240
270     GAA TGC CGC CCT GGT TAT TCC GGA AGA CCG TTT TCT ATC ATC TGC CTA AAA AAC TCA GTC
      E C R P G Y S G R P F S I I C L K N S V
300
330     TGG ACT GGT GCT AAG GAC AGG TGC AGA CGT AAA TCA TGT CGT AAT CCT CCA GAT CCT GTG
      W T G A K D R C R R K S C R N P P D P V
360
390     AAT GGC ATG GTG CAT GTG ATC AAA GGC ATC CAG TTC GGA TCC CAA ATT AAA TAT TCT TGT
      N G M V H V I K G I Q F G S Q I K Y S C
420

```

125. The method according to claim 90 in which the patient is a non-human animal.

126. The method according to claim 94 in which the patient is a non-human animal.

5 127. The method according to claim 95 in which the patient is a non-human animal.

128. The method according to claim 100 in which the patient is a non-human animal.

10 129. The method according to claim 101 in which the patient is a non-human animal.

15

20

25

30

35

118. The method according to claim 113 in which the thrombolytic agent is a reversibly blocked in vivo fibrinolytic enzyme wherein the catalytic site, essential for fibrinolytic activity is blocked by a group which is removable by hydrolysis at a rate such that the pseudo first order rate constant for hydrolysis is in the range  $10^{-6}\text{sec}^{-1}$  to  $10^{-3}\text{sec}^{-1}$  in isotonic aqueous media at pH 7.4 at 37°C.

119. The method according to claim 113 in which the thrombolytic agent is anisoylated streptokinase-plasminogen-activator complex (APSAC).

120. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a soluble CR1 protein and a thrombolytic agent together with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or excipient.

121. The pharmaceutical composition according to claim 120 in which the thrombolytic agent is anisoylated streptokinase-plasminogen activator complex (APSAC).

122. The pharmaceutical composition according to claim 120 in which the soluble CR1 protein is expressed by a Chinese hamster ovary cell DUX B11 carrying plasmid pBSCR1c/pTCSgpt as deposited with the ATCC and assigned accession number CRL 10052.

123. A molecule comprising a portion of the amino acid sequence substantially as depicted in Figure 1, which portion is characterized by the ability to bind C3b, and which molecule comprises at least two copies of the LHR-B sequence.

124. The method according to claim 86 in which the patient is a non-human animal.

112. A pharmaceutical composition comprising an effective amount of the protein or fragment of claim 60, 61 or 62, and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

113. A method of treating thrombotic conditions in humans and animals, which method comprises administering to a human or animal in need thereof an effective amount of a soluble CR1 protein and an effective amount of a thrombolytic agent.

114. The method according to claim 113, wherein the soluble CR1 protein and thrombolytic agent are administered simultaneously.

115. The method according to claim 113, wherein the CR1 protein is encoded by a nucleic acid vector selected from the group consisting of pBSCR1c, pBSCR1s, pBM-CR1c, pBSCR1c/pTCSgpt, and pBSCR1s/pTCSgpt.

116. The method according to claim 113 in which the thrombolytic agent is a plasminogen activator.

117. The method according to claim 113, in which the thrombolytic agent is selected from the group consisting of tissue plasminogen activator or a mutein thereof, single-chain urokinase, two-chain urokinase, streptokinase, and a fibrinolytically active hybrid protein which comprises one chain of a 2-chain protease linked to a chain of a different two chain protease, at least one of the chains in the hybrid protein being derived from a fibrinolytically active protease, such that the hybrid protein has a catalytic site essential for fibrinolytic activity which is optionally blocked by a removable blocking group.

102. A method of treating or preventing damage in a patient caused by inflammation comprising administering the molecule of claim 56 to the patient.

103. A method of treating or preventing damage in a patient caused by inflammation comprising administering the molecule of claim 59 to the patient.

104. A method of treating or preventing damage in a patient caused by inflammation comprising administering the molecule of claim 60 or 61 to the patient.

105. A method of treating or preventing damage in a patient caused by inflammation comprising administering the molecule of claim 62 to the patient.

106. A molecule comprising the fragment of claim 42, 43 or 44.

107. A molecule comprising the fragment of claim 45, 46 or 47.

108. A molecule comprising the fragment of claim 55, 56 or 59.

109. A molecule comprising the fragment of claim 60, 61 or 62.

110. A pharmaceutical composition comprising an effective amount of the protein or fragment of claim 42, 43 or 45, and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

111. A pharmaceutical composition comprising an effective amount of the protein or fragment of claim 55, 56 or 59, and a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

94. A method of treating or preventing damage in a patient caused by a myocardial infarct comprising administering the protein of claim 41 or a fragment thereof comprising 24 amino acids to the patient.

5 95. A method of treating or preventing damage in a patient caused by a myocardial infarct comprising administering the molecule of claim 55 to the patient.

10 96. A method of treating or preventing damage in a patient caused by a myocardial infarct comprising administering the molecule of claim 56 to the patient.

15 97. A method of treating or preventing damage in a patient caused by a myocardial infarct comprising administering the molecule of claim 59 to the patient.

98. A method of treating or preventing damage in a patient caused by a myocardial infarct comprising administering the molecule of claim 60 or 61 to the patient.

20 99. A method of treating or preventing damage in a patient caused by a myocardial infarct comprising administering the molecule of claim 62 to the patient.

25 100. A method of treating or preventing damage in a patient caused by inflammation comprising administering the protein of claim 41 or a fragment thereof comprising 24 amino acids to the patient.

30 101. A method of treating or preventing damage in a patient caused by inflammation comprising administering the molecule of claim 55 to the patient.

87. A method of treating a patient with an immune disorder or a disorder which involves undesirable or inappropriate complement activity comprising administering the fragment of claim 42 or 43 to the patient.

5 88. A method of treating a patient with an immune disorder or a disorder which involves undesirable or inappropriate complement activity comprising administering the fragment of claim 45 to the patient.

10 89. A method of treating a patient with an immune disorder or a disorder which involves undesirable or inappropriate complement activity comprising administering the fragment of claim 51, 53 or 54.

15 90. A method of treating a patient with an immune disorder or a disorder which involves undesirable or inappropriate complement activity comprising administering the molecule of claim 55 to the patient.

20 91. A method of treating a patient with an immune disorder or a disorder which involves undesirable or inappropriate complement activity comprising administering the molecule of claim 56 to the patient.

25 92. A method of treating a patient with an immune disorder or a disorder which involves undesirable or inappropriate complement activity comprising administering the molecule of claim 59 to the patient.

30 93. A method of treating a patient with an immune disorder or a disorder which involves undesirable or inappropriate complement activity comprising administering the molecule of claim 62 to the patient.

77. A method for producing a CR1 molecule comprising growing the cell of claim 15.

78. A method for producing a CR1 molecule comprising growing the cell of claim 33.

5 79. A method for producing a CR1 molecule comprising growing the cell of claim 34.

80. A method for producing a CR1 molecule comprising growing the cell of claim 35.

10 81. A method for producing a CR1 molecule comprising growing the cell of claim 36.

15 82. A method for producing a CR1 molecule comprising growing the cell of claim 37.

83. A method for producing a CR1 molecule comprising growing the cell of claim 38.

20 84. A method for producing a CR1 molecule comprising growing the cell of claim 39.

85. A method for producing a CR1 molecule comprising growing the cell of claim 40.

25 86. A method of treating a patient with an immune disorder or a disorder which involves undesirable or inappropriate complement activity comprising administering the protein of claim 41 or a fragment thereof comprising 24  
30 amino acids to the patient.



- (e) eluting the protein or fragment from the high pressure liquid chromatography column of step (d).

71. The method according to claim 69 or 70 in which the CR1 protein or fragment substantially lacks a transmembrane domain.

72. A method for purifying a CR1 molecule comprising:

- (a) expressing a CR1 molecule substantially lacking a transmembrane domain in a cell in culture such that the CR1 molecule is secreted;
- (b) obtaining a sample of the cell culture fluid comprising the CR1 molecule;
- (c) subjecting the sample to cation exchange high pressure liquid chromatography; and
- (d) eluting the CR1 molecule from the high pressure liquid chromatography column.

73. The method according to claim 72 which further comprises after step (c):

- (d) subjecting the molecule to anion-exchange high pressure liquid chromatography; and
- (e) eluting the molecule from the high pressure liquid chromatography column of step (d).

74. A method for producing a CR1 molecule comprising growing the cell of claim 12.

75. A method for producing a CR1 molecule comprising growing the cell of claim 13.

76. A method for producing a CR1 molecule comprising growing the cell of claim 14.

63. A recombinant cell expressing the protein of claim 41 on its surface.

64. A recombinant cell expressing the protein of claim 42, 43 or 45.

5 65. A recombinant cell expressing the protein of claim 51.

66. A recombinant cell expressing the protein of claim 55.

10 67. A recombinant cell expressing the protein of claim 56.

15 68. A recombinant cell expressing a fragment of the protein of claim 36 comprising 24 amino acids, which fragment is secreted by the cell.

69. A method for purifying a CR1 protein or fragment thereof comprising:

- 20
- (a) obtaining a sample containing the CR1 protein or fragment;
  - (b) subjecting the sample to cation exchange high pressure liquid chromatography; and
  - 25 (c) eluting the protein or fragment from the high pressure liquid chromatography column.

70. The method according to claim 69 which further comprises after step (c):

- 30 (d) subjecting the protein or fragment to anion-exchange high pressure liquid chromatography; and

54. The protein of claim 53 which is secreted by a cell in which it is expressed.

55. A CR1 molecule substantially lacking a transmembrane region.

5 56. The CR1 molecule of claim 55 which is secreted by a cell in which it is expressed.

57. The CR1 molecule of claim 55 which is unglycosylated.

10 58. The CR1 molecule of claim 55 which is glycosylated.

15 59. The CR1 molecule of claim 55 which is functional as detected by the ability in vitro to inhibit neutrophil oxidative burst, complement-mediated hemolysis, or C3a and C5a production.

20 60. The CR1 molecule of claim 55 which is encoded by a nucleic acid vector selected from the group consisting of pBSCR1c, pBSCR1s, pBM-CR1c, pBSCR1c/pTCSgpt, and pBSCR1s/pTCSgpt.

25 61. The CR1 molecule of claim 55 which is encoded by a nucleic acid vector selected from the group consisting of pT-CR1c1, pT-CR1c2, pT-CR1c3, pT-CR1c4, and pT-CR1c5.

30 62. The CR1 molecule of claim 55 which is expressed by a Chinese hamster ovary cell DUX B11 carrying plasmid pBSCR1c/pTCSgpt, as deposited with the ATCC and assigned accession number CRL 10052.

43. A fragment of the protein of claim 41 which is characterized by the ability to bind C4b.

44. A fragment of the protein of claim 41 which is characterized by the abilities to bind C3b and to bind C4b.

5

45. A fragment of the protein of claim 41 which has factor I cofactor activity.

46. A fragment of the protein of claim 41 which can inhibit C3 convertase activity.

10

47. A fragment of the protein of claim 41 which can inhibit C5 convertase activity.

15

48. The protein of claim 41 or a fragment thereof comprising 24 amino acids which is glycosylated.

49. The protein of claim 41 which is unglycosylated.

20

50. The protein of claim 41 which is expressed as a cell-surface protein.

51. A protein comprising the amino acid sequence substantially as encoded by the nucleotides depicted in Figure 1 from numbers 28 through 1533.

25

52. A nucleic acid sequence which encodes the protein of claim 51.

30

53. The protein of claim 51 which substantially lacks a transmembrane region.

35

32. A recombinant DNA vector comprising plasmid pBSCR1c/pTCSgpt, as deposited with the ATCC and assigned accession number CRL 10052.

33. A recombinant cell comprising the sequence of claim 19, 20 or 21.

5

34. The recombinant cell of claim 33 comprising a bacterium.

35. A recombinant cell comprising a cell containing the vector of claim 25.

10

36. A recombinant cell comprising a cell containing the vector of claim 26.

15

37. A recombinant cell comprising a cell containing the vector of claim 27.

38. A recombinant cell comprising a cell containing the vector of claim 28.

20

39. A recombinant cell comprising a cell containing the vector of claim 29.

40. A Chinese hamster ovary cell DUX B11 carrying plasmid pBSCR1c/pTCSgpt, as deposited with the ATCC and assigned accession number CRL 10052.

25

41. A protein comprising the amino acid sequence substantially as depicted in Figure 1.

30

42. A fragment of the protein of claim 41 which is characterized by the ability to bind C3b.

35

22. The nucleic acid sequence of claim 21 in which the protein is functional as detected by the ability in vitro to inhibit neutrophil oxidative burst, complement-mediated hemolysis, or C3a and C5a production.

23. The nucleic acid sequence of claim 19, 20 or 21 which comprises a DNA sequence.

24. The nucleic acid sequence of claim 19, 20 or 21 which comprises an RNA sequence.

25. A recombinant nucleic acid vector comprising the sequence of claim 19 or 20.

26. A recombinant nucleic acid vector comprising the sequence of claim 21 or 22.

27. A recombinant expression vector comprising the sequence of claim 19.

28. A recombinant expression vector comprising the sequence of claim 20.

29. A recombinant expression vector comprising the sequence of claim 21.

30. The recombinant expression vector of claim 28 which is selected from the group consisting of pBSCR1c, pBSCR1s, pBM-CR1c, pBSCR1c/pTCSgpt, and pBSCR1s/pTCSgpt.

31. The recombinant expression vector of claim 28 which is selected from the group consisting of pT-CR1c1, pT-CR1c2, pT-CR1c3, pT-CR1c4, and pT-CR1c5.

12. A recombinant cell comprising the sequence of claim 1.
13. A recombinant cell comprising a cell containing the nucleic acid vector of claim 4.
- 5 14. A recombinant cell comprising a cell containing the nucleic acid vector of claim 5.
- 15 15. A recombinant cell comprising a cell containing the nucleic acid vector of claim 8.
- 10 16. A recombinant cell comprising a cell containing the nucleic acid vector of claim 10.
- 15 17. The recombinant cell of claim 12, 13 or 14 comprising a bacterium.
18. An Escherichia coli, as deposited with the NRRL and assigned accession number B-18355.
- 20 19. A nucleic acid sequence comprising the sequence substantially as depicted in Figure 1 from nucleotide numbers 28 through 1533.
- 25 20. The nucleic acid sequence of claim 19 which encodes a protein substantially lacking a transmembrane region.
- 30 21. The nucleic acid sequence of claim 20 in which the protein is secreted by a cell in which it is expressed.

WHAT IS CLAIMED IS:

1. A nucleic acid sequence comprising a sequence encoding a full-length CR1 protein substantially as depicted in Figure 1 from nucleotide numbers 28 through 6147.
- 5           2. The sequence of claim 1 which comprises a DNA sequence.
3. The sequence of claim 1 which comprises an RNA sequence.
- 10           4. A recombinant nucleic acid vector comprising the sequence of claim 1.
5. A recombinant nucleic acid vector comprising  
15 the sequence of claim 2.
6. A recombinant DNA vector comprising pABCD.
7. A recombinant DNA vector comprising piABCD,  
20 as deposited with the NRRL and assigned accession number B-18355.
8. A recombinant expression vector comprising the sequence of claim 1.
- 25           9. The expression vector of claim 8 which is capable of expressing the sequence in a bacterium.
10. The expression vector of claim 8 which is  
30 capable of expressing the sequence in a mammalian cell.
11. The expression vector of claim 10 comprising piABCD, as deposited with the NRRL and assigned accession number B-18355.



American Type Culture Collection  
Rockville, Maryland  
US

Deposited on March 23, 1989

Accession NO. CRL-10052

International Application No: PCT/

/

## MICRO RGANISMS

Optional Sheet in connection with the microorganism referred to on page 152, line s 10&15 of the description \*

## A. IDENTIFICATION OF DEPOSIT \*

Further deposits are identified on an additional sheet ☒ \*

Name of depository institution \*

Agricultural Research Culture Collection

Address of depository institution (including postal code and country) \*

Peoria, Illinois  
US

Date of deposit \*

March 31, 1988

Accession Number \*

B-18355

B. ADDITIONAL INDICATIONS \* (leave blank if not applicable). This information is continued on a separate attached sheet ☐

C. DESIGNATED STATES FOR WHICH INDICATIONS ARE MADE \* (If the indications are not for all designated States)

D. SEPARATE FURNISHING OF INDICATIONS \* (leave blank if not applicable)

The indications listed below will be submitted to the International Bureau later \* (Specify the general nature of the indications e.g. "Accession Number of Deposit")

E. ☒ This sheet was received with the international application when filed (to be checked by the receiving Office)M. M. M. M.  
(Authorized Officer)☐ The date of receipt (from the applicant) by the International Bureau is:

was

(Authorized Officer)

allotype may further decrease the efficiencies of such interactions and lead to impairment of receptor-mediated cellular responses at tissue inflammatory sites.

17. DEPOSIT OF MICROORGANISMS

E. coli strain DK1/P3 carrying plasmid piABCD (designated pCR1-piABCD), encoding the full-length CR1 protein, was deposited with the Agricultural Research Culture Collection (NRRL), Peoria, Illinois, on March 31, 1988 and was assigned accession number B-18355.

Chinese hamster ovary cell line DUX B11 carrying plasmid pBSCR1c/pTCSgpt clone 35.6, encoding a soluble CR1 molecule, was deposited with the American Type Culture Collection (ATCC), Rockville, Maryland, on March 23, 1989 and was assigned accession number CRL 10052.

The present invention is not to be limited in scope by the microorganisms deposited since the deposited embodiments are intended as single illustration of one aspect of the invention and any microorganisms which are functionally equivalent are within the scope of this invention. Indeed, various modifications of the invention in addition to those shown and described herein will become apparent to those skilled in the art from the foregoing description and accompanying drawings. Such modifications are intended to fall within the scope of the appended claims.

It is also understood that all base pair sizes given for nucleotides are approximate and are used for the purpose of description.

Various references are cited herein, the disclosures of which are incorporated by reference in their entirety.

-151-

adjacent site for C3b, their structure is consistent with their comparable capacities to inhibit the classical pathway convertases (Figs. 39B and 40B) (Takata et al., 1987, J. Exp. Med. 165:1494). The differences between our findings and those of another study may be explained by the previous use of less stable fluid phase convertases and a mixture of the F (or A) and F' (or C) allotypes instead of purified forms (Seya et al., 1985, J. Immunol. 135:2661). An alternative explanation was that the F' variant used in that study had a different composition of LHR.

Although the efficiency of uptake of immune complexes by CR1 is enhanced by the clustering of this receptor on erythrocytes (Paccaud et al., 1988, J. Immunol. 141:3889; Chevalier & Kazatchkine, 1989, J. Immunol. 142:2031), individuals with low CR1 numbers may have fewer clusters of this receptor as well as fewer receptor molecules per cluster (Paccaud et al., 1988, J. Immunol. 141:3889). Thus the presence of the F' allotype and low amounts of CR1 in SLE patients may result in fewer total C3b and C4b binding sites and a decreased efficiency in the clearance of immune complexes from the circulation (Dykman et al., 1984, J. Exp. Med. 159:691; Van Dyne et al., 1987, Clin. Exp. Immunol. 68:570; Wilson et al., 1987, Immunol. Res. 6:192; Miyakawa et al., 1981, Lancet ii:493; Schifferli et al., 1988, J. Immunol. 140:899). The lower affinities of sCR1 observed for the classical pathway convertases (Figs. 39 and 40) indicate that the relative amounts of C4b and C3b deposited on soluble immune complexes may be critical to the CR1-dependent uptake and processing. The absence of preclustered CR1 in neutrophils under some conditions (Paccaud et al., 1990, Eur. J. Immunol. 20:283) suggests that mechanisms that induce receptor aggregation may be essential for the triggering of biologic reactions in nucleated cells (Daha et al., 1984, J. Immunol. 132:1197; Bacle et al., 1990, J. Immunol. 144:147). A shorter CR1

-150-

fold with the addition of each C3b binding site, resulting in a 100 fold difference between sCR1 molecules derived from pasecACD or pasecABBBCD (Fig. 38). Consistent with the previous observation that the C4b binding site in LHR-A retains low affinity for C3b (Klickstein et al., 1988, J. Exp. Med. 168:1699), the pasecACD-derived sCR1 with only LHR-A and -C was more effective than the C3b monomers in blocking the uptake of radiolabeled dimer (Fig. 38). The higher binding observed for the pasecABBBCD-derived sCR1 relative to the pasecABCD-derived molecule similarly suggested engagement of two pairs of binding sites (Fig. 38), and confirmed the previous hypothesis that multivalent interaction was favored by such a tandem array of LHR (Klickstein et al., 1988, J. Exp. Med. 168:1699; Wong et al., 1989, J. Exp. Med. 169:847). Since the binding of CR1 for monomeric C3b is relatively low (Fig. 38), the lack of gross differences in the cofactor capacities of the different sCR1 forms in this (Fig. 37) and other studies (Seya et al., 1985, J. Immunol. 135:2661) indicated that the conditions used did not favor simultaneous occupancy of more than one active site by monomeric ligands.

Differences in the effectiveness of the soluble CR1 variants to block the alternative pathway C3 and C5 convertases is consistent with their differential affinities for the C3b homodimers (Kinoshita et al., 1988, J. Immunol. 141:3895). Indeed, in this assay, the sCR1 variants having two or more C3b binding sites were at least 30 fold more efficient than that which had only one site (Figs. 39A and 40A). However, the pasecABBBCD-derived sCR1 is not more effective than that derived from pasecABCD (Figs. 39A and 40A) although its binding is much higher in a fluid phase assay (Fig. 38). Thus, its full capacity in this assay may be restricted by the topographical distribution of the convertase sites on the activating surface. Since all three variants studied retained one site for C4b and at least one

1986, J. Exp. Med. 164:1531) hybridized with a combination of exon-and intron-derived probes that was specific for LHR-C (Figs. 33 and 34). This pattern was consistent only with the deletion of LHR-B or an equivalent region resulting in the loss of one C3b binding site. We could not confirm that the appearance of the 18 kb fragment was accompanied by the disappearance on Southern blots of a ~30 kb fragment derived from LHR-B and -C because no individual homozygous for the F' allele was available for comparison. Although the smaller transcripts for this allotype might have arisen through alternative splicing (Wong et al., 1986, J. Exp. Med. 164:1531; Holers et al., 1987, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 84:2459), these mechanisms cannot account for the observed EcoRV RFLP.

The association of the F' allotype with SLE is consistent with the suggestion that this variant may have diminished capacity to bind opsonized immune complexes (Dykman et al., 1984, J. Exp. Med. 159:691; Van Dyne et al., 1987, Clin. Exp. Immunol. 68:570). We compared the functional capabilities of sCR1 that differ in numbers of LHR-B. The effective competition of C3b dimer uptake by soluble CR1 in a recent study indicated that occupancy of tandem binding sites could occur (Weisman et al., 1990, Science 249:146), thus permitting a direct assessment of the binding of each receptor molecule for this bivalent ligand. Our strategy differed both in the site of the inserted stop codon and in the use of soluble CR1 purified from the culture supernatants of COS cells transiently transfected with plasmids that encode CR1 molecules with two, one or no LHR-B (Fig. 35). The amounts of monomeric or dimeric C3b and pascABCD-derived recombinant CR1 necessary for 50% inhibition of binding of radiolabeled dimeric C3b to erythrocytes were very similar to those in an earlier report (Weisman et al., 1990, Science 249:146). Moreover, the binding of the purified sCR1 for dimeric C3b increased 10

-148-

(Kinoshita et al., 1988, J. Immunol. 141:3895). That the same effect was seen with the C3 convertase indicated the presence of multiple molecules of C3b in association with the properdin-stabilized C3bBb complex. In contrast, large differences were not observed among the sCR1 variants in their capacities to inhibit the classical pathway C3 and C5 convertase (Figs. 39B and 40B), indicating that they bound similarly the C4b molecules within the C4bC2a complex or the C4b/C3b heterodimers of the C5 convertases (Takata et al., 1987, J. Exp. Med. 165:1494). Furthermore, except for the pascACD-derived molecule, 2 to 10 fold more recombinant CR1 was necessary to inhibit the enzymes of the classical relative to the alternative pathway, perhaps reflecting lower binding of sCR1 for the C4b-containing convertases.

#### 16.4. DISCUSSION

That each polymorphic variant of human CR1 is encoded by a different number of LHR is predicted by the ~1.3 kb differences in the transcripts associated with each allotype (Wong et al., 1986, J. Exp. Med. 164:1531; Holers et al., 1987, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA 84:2459). The parallels between the homologies in the coding regions and the homologies in the corresponding noncoding regions of the different LHR of the CR1 gene enabled us to predict the coding sequences based on a restriction map of the genomic clones. Thus the fifth LHR in the S allele with a 5' half that resembled LHR-B and a 3' half that resembled LHR-A was expected to encode a third binding site for C3b in the S allotype (Wong et al., 1989, J. Exp. Med. 169:847). Since EcoRV was the only restriction enzyme among nineteen others that revealed a RFLP associated with the F' allotype (Wong et al., 1986, J. Exp. Med. 164:1531), a deletion in this allele apparently involved a highly homologous region. In this study, the 18 kb EcoRV fragment associated with individuals who expressed the F' allotype (Wong et al.,

-147-

used to inhibit the uptake of  $^{125}\text{I}$ -C3b dimer by erythrocyte CR1. The concentrations required for 50% inhibition reflected the relative binding of either the ligand or the cell bound receptor. In the experiment shown in Figure 38, 10 nM of unlabeled C3b dimer was required for 50% inhibition of the interaction between  $^{125}\text{I}$ -C3b dimer and erythrocyte CR1. The interaction of the receptor with monomeric C3b was much weaker, requiring 1  $\mu\text{M}$ , or 100 fold more of this ligand to achieve similar inhibition (Fig. 38). The low binding of this monomeric interaction suggests that cross-linking of two discrete molecules of soluble CR1 by the dimeric C3b ligand would not be favored under these conditions and that occupancy of two intramolecular binding sites is necessary for effective competition. This divalent interaction was ascertained by the requirement of 10 nM and 100 nM of the pascABCD- and the pascACD-derived sCR1, respectively, for 50% inhibition. Interestingly, only 1 nM of the pascABBCD-derived sCR1 having three C3b binding sites was needed for a similar effect (Fig. 38). Thus the soluble CR1 forms with one, two or three C3b binding sites differed in their binding of dimeric C3b but not for the monomeric form of this ligand that had been used as substrate for factor I cleavage (Fig. 37).

Inhibition of the alternative and classical pathway convertases. The capacities of the soluble CR1 variants to block the alternative and classical pathway convertases were compared by measurement of the C3a and C5a released on incubation of human serum with zymosan or aggregated IgG. while only 1 to 2 nM of the pascABBCD or the pascABCD-derived sCR1 were necessary to achieve 50% inhibition of both the alternative pathway C3 and C5 convertases, 30 fold more of the pascACD sCR1 was required for similar effects (Figs. 39A and 40A). This is consistent with the above predictions that the sCR1 variants would bind differently the C3b homodimers in the C5 convertases



-146-

Soluble recombinant CR1 was isolated by chromatography on YZ-1-Sepharose from the culture supernatants of COS cells that had been transfected with the CR1 plasmids. Each sCR1 protein was greater than 95% pure and the three forms exhibited incremental  $M_r$  differences of ~30 kd under nonreducing conditions on SDS-PAGE, similar to those observed for the naturally occurring allotypes (Fig. 36). Biosynthetic labeling with  $^{35}\text{S}$ -cysteine of the COS cells transfected with the vector  $\text{Ap}^{\text{r}}$ M8 alone showed no absorption of CR1-like proteins to the YZ-1 Sepharose. Furthermore, the soluble sCR1 had  $M_r$  that were similar to the CR1 isolated from  $^{125}\text{I}$ -labeled erythrocytes, consistent with deletion of only 70 amino acids from each molecule. In the lanes that contained sCR1 isolated from pasecABBCD- or pasecABCD-transfected cells, small amounts of protein with  $M_r$  similar to the smaller forms were observed (Fig. 36, lanes 2 and 3). These may represent the products of homologous recombination that were spontaneously generated within the transfected COS cells.

Cofactor activity of sCR1. The functional integrity of the different forms of sCR1 was measured in a cofactor assay in which radiolabeled C3b was converted to the iC3b and C3dg fragments. The amounts of sCR1 that were required for 50% factor-I-mediated cleavage of the  $\alpha'$  chain of C3b ranged from 3.5 nM for the pasecABBCD-derived protein to 8 nM for the pasecACD-derived protein, and differed only slightly for the three forms (Fig. 37). Furthermore, conversion of C3b to C3dg was seen with the addition of 10 nM to 20 nM of all forms of sCR1. Thus soluble recombinant CR1, irrespective of the number of C3b binding sites, retained the capacity of the native molecule to bind C3b and served as a cofactor for the factor-I cleavage.

Capacity of sCR1 to bind dimeric C3b. In order to assess the effect of having different numbers of LHR-B on the binding of C3b-coated targets, the sCR1 variants were

-145-

at least one of the exons that contain the C3b binding site in either LHR-B or -C, the resulting allele of three LHR would encode only one C3b binding site.

Plasmid construction and purification of soluble sCR1. There are no direct comparisons of the affinities of the CR1 allotypes for opsonized immune complexes or multimeric ligands because individuals homozygous for the F' allotype have not been identified. The availability of complete CR1 cDNA sequences and the results of the genomic analyses enabled us to produce sCR1 with structures predicted for the different polymorphic variants. To assess the capacity of individual CR1 molecules of each allotype for bivalent interactions with C3b dimers, cDNA constructs for soluble CR1 were made by the insertion of a stop codon between the end of the 3' most SCR and the beginning of the transmembrane domain. This approach eliminates the potential for interactions between the dimeric C3b and separate, adjacent molecules of membrane-bound CR1. In addition, the use of soluble CR1 avoids possible interference with enzymatic assays from the detergents required to maintain the solubility of membrane-derived preparations. The strategy employed for the insertion or deletion of an LHR utilized the conserved restriction sites to preserve the reading frame. The Pst I fragment that was inserted or deleted encoded SCR-5, -6, -7 of LHR-A and SCR-1, -2, -3 and -4 of LHR-B (Fig. 35). Since the amino acid sequences of the third to the seventh SCR are identical in LHR-A and -B (Fig. 35) (Examples 6 & 7, supra), these procedures would result in the insertion or deletion of sequences equivalent to an LHR-B. The plasmids pasecACD, pasecABCD, and pasecABBBCD (Fig. 35) would therefore encode proteins that have one, two or three C3b binding sites, respectively.

-144-

was originally derived from SCR-3 to SCR-7 in LHR-B but its sequences were sufficiently homologous to allow hybridization to the fourth through the seventh SCR of other LHR (Examples 6 & 7, supra; Klickstein et al., 1987, J. Exp. Med. 165:1095; Klickstein et al., 1988, J. Exp. Med. 168:1699; Wong et al., 1989, J. Exp. Med. 169:847). In order to assign each fragment to an LHR, the overlapping genomic clones that spanned the entire F allele were mapped by EcoRV (Fig. 34). Fragments of 9.4 kb and 22 kb corresponded to those expected from LHR-A and -D, respectively. This was confirmed by the hybridization of the 9.4 kb but not the 22 kb fragment to the intron probes PX and HE (Fig. 33). Since there were no EcoRV sites in LHR-B, the largest fragment at the top of the blot that hybridized to all the probes represented the ~32 kb fragment that spanned LHR-B and most of LHR-C (Figs. 33 & 34). Restriction mapping of genomic clones that spanned the previously reported CR1-like pseudogene (Wong et al., 1989, J. Exp. Med. 169:847) indicates that the fragments of 20 kb and 15 kb are derived from this region (Fig. 33).

The 18 kb EcoRV fragment that was associated with the expression of the F' allotype hybridized to the cDNA probe 1-4 and the intron probe PE, indicating that it contained the 5' half of LHR-B or -C. This fragment did not hybridize to the intron probes PX and HE, indicating that it lacked the 3' half of LHR-B (Fig. 33). Deletion of LHR-B or another fragment of similar length from the ~32 kb EcoRV fragment would yield a fragment of 18 kb which extended from the 3' most EcoRV site of LHR-A to the 5' most EcoRV site of LHR-C (Fig. 34). Such a fragment would be expected to hybridize only with the probes 1-4, PE, and 1-1, consistent with the findings in Figure 33. Since any ~15 kb deletion including the PX and HE sites of LHR-B necessarily includes

-143-

different soluble forms of sCR1 (Weisman et al., 1990, 249:146). After one hour on ice, cell-bound ligand was separated from unbound material by centrifugation of the erythrocytes through dibutylphthalate (Wilson et al., 1982, New Engl. J. Med. 307:981). The amount of dimeric C3b bound in the presence of excess rabbit IgG anti-CR1 was taken as the nonspecific background, and specific counts bound in the absence of any inhibitor were used as the 100% control. For all these binding studies, erythrocytes from one normal individual were utilized. These cells were homozygous for the F allotype and had relatively high amount of CR-1 (~800 YZ-1 mAb binding sites).

Inhibition of the alternative and classical pathway convertases. For assessment of the activation of the alternative pathway, 25% human serum was incubated with  $5 \times 10^6$  zymosan particles (gift of Dr. Joyce Czop, Harvard Medical School, Boston, MA) in Veronal-buffered saline with 2 mM  $MgCl_2$  and 8 mM EGTA in the absence or presence of incremental amounts of sCR1. For assessment of the activation of the classical pathway, 60  $\mu g/ml$  of heat aggregated rabbit IgG was substituted for zymosan, and the reactions were performed in Veronal-buffered saline with 0.5 mM  $MgCl_2$  and 0.15 mM  $CaCl_2$  (Weisman et al., 1990, Science 249:146). After incubation for 40 minutes at 37°C, the reactions were stopped by addition of 10 mM EDTA and assayed for the amounts of C3a and C5a cleavage using radioimmunoassay kits (Amersham, Chicago, IL).

### 16.3. RESULTS

Structure of the F' allele of CR1. We have previously reported that when the DNA of individuals who expressed the ~210 kD F' allotype of CR1 was digested with EcoRV, an additional fragment of 18 kb was observed on probing the Southern blots with the CR1 cDNA probe 1-1 (Wong et al., 1986, J. Exp. Med. 164:1531) (Fig. 33). This probe

-142-

determined by the Micro BCA kit (Pierce, Rockford, IL) using BSA as a standard. The protein was analyzed by SDS-PAGE on a gel containing a linear gradient of 5% to 15% acrylamide.

Cofactor activity of sCR1. Purified human C3 (Tack & Prahl, 1976, Biochemistry 15:4512) was treated with 0.5% TPCK-trypsin (Sigma, St. Louis, MO) for 5 minutes at 37°C and the reaction was stopped by the addition of a four fold molar excess of soy bean trypsin inhibitor. The C3b was labeled with  $^{125}\text{I}$  to a specific activity of  $5 \times 10^5$  cpm/ $\mu\text{g}$  using Iodogen (Pierce, Rockford, IL). Cofactor activity of sCR1 was assessed by incubation of 200 ng of C3b, 100 ng of factor I (Fearon, 1977, J. Immunol. 119:1248) with varying amounts of sCR1 in 20  $\mu\text{l}$  PBS for 1 hour at 37°C (Wong et al., 1985, J. Immunol. Meth. 82:303; Example 11, supra). The reactions were stopped by boiling the samples in an equal volume of SDS-PAGE sample buffer containing 0.1 M dithiothreitol. After electrophoresis and autoradiography, the areas of the dried gel corresponding to the position of the  $\alpha'$  chains were excised and the amount of radioactivity measured in a Beckman gamma counter (Wong et al., 1985, J. Immunol. Meth. 82:303). The counts associated with the  $\alpha'$  chain in the absence of CR1 were taken as the 100% control.

Capacity of sCR1 to bind dimeric C3b. C3b was cross-linked by dimethyl suberimidate (Sigma, St. Louis, MO) (Wilson et al., 1982, New Engl. J. Med. 307:981) or 1,6-bismaleimido-hexane (Pierce, Rockford, IL) (Weisman et al., 1990, Science 249:146), and dimers were selected by sedimentation on a linear gradient of 4.5% to 30% sucrose in PBS (Wilson et al., 1982, New Engl. J. Med. 307:981). Either method yielded dimers that bound to erythrocyte CR1 with association constants ( $K_a$ ) that ranged from  $1$  to  $3 \times 10^8 \text{ M}^{-1}$ . Three hundred ng of  $^{125}\text{I}$ -C3b dimers ( $4 \times 10^6$  cpm/ $\mu\text{g}$ ) were incubated with  $2 \times 10^8$  erythrocytes in 200  $\mu\text{l}$  HBSS with 0.1% BSA in the absence or presence of incremental amounts of unlabeled monomeric or dimeric C3b, or the

-141-

Nhe I, and inserted into the Xba I site of the expression vector Ap<sup>r</sup>M8, a derivative of CDM8 (Seed, 1987, Nature 329:840). This plasmid, named pasecABBCD, has a stop codon inserted after the thirty-seventh SCR and lacks the sequences encoding the transmembrane and cytoplasmic domains. The plasmid, pasecABCD, was made by the transfer of the four LHR of the F allotype from pBSABCD into Ap<sup>r</sup>M8 using a similar strategy. A third plasmid, containing only three LHR and named pasecACD, was made by an in-frame deletion of the Pst I fragment extending from SCR-5 in LHR-A to a corresponding position in LHR-B. Thirty to sixty  $\mu$ g of each of the above plasmids were used to transfect  $2 \times 10^7$  COS-1 cells (American Type Culture Collection, Rockville, MD) in the presence of 400  $\mu$ g/ml DEAE-dextran, and 100  $\mu$ M chloroquine for 4 hours at 37°C in Dulbecco's modified Eagle medium with high glucose (DMEM) (Hazelton, Lenexa, KS) and 10% Nuserum (Collaborative Research, Bedford, MA). The cells were shocked for 3 minutes at room temperature with 10% DMSO in HBSS without divalent cations after removal of the transfection medium (Ausubel et al., 1987, in Current Protocols in Molecular Biology, John Wiley & Sons and Greene Assoc., New York), washed and cultured in DMEM and 10% FCS. The culture supernatants were collected every 48 hours for 10 days, clarified of cell debris by centrifugation, and frozen at -70°C. On thawing of the supernatants, PMSF and sodium azide were added to final concentrations of 5 mM and 0.2%, respectively, and sCR1 was purified by affinity chromatography on mAb YZ-1-Sepharose as described except that detergents were omitted from the eluting buffer (Wong et al., 1985, J. Immunol. Meth. 82:303; Example 12.2.1, supra). The purified proteins were dialyzed twice against 1,000 volumes of PBS and frozen in small aliquots at -70°C. This procedure routinely yielded 150-200  $\mu$ g of sCR1 as

16.2. MATERIALS AND METHODS

Analysis of DNA. Genomic DNA was prepared from peripheral blood leukocytes, digested with EcoRV, electrophoresed and analysed by Southern blotting as previously described (Wong et al., 1986, J. Exp. Med. 164:1531). The CR1 cDNA probe 1-1 hybridizes to SCR-4 to -7 of all the LHR while the probe 1-4 specifically hybridizes to SCR-1 and -2 of LHR-B and -C (Klickstein et al., 1987, J. Exp. Med. 165:1095; Klickstein et al., 1988, J. Exp. Med. 168:1699; Wong et al., 1989, J. Exp. Med. 169:847). The noncoding probe PE hybridizes to the intron between the two exons that encode SCR-2 in LHR-B and -C. PX hybridizes to the intron between the two exons that encode SCR-6 in LHR-A and -B, and HE hybridizes to the intron 5' of SCR-7 in LHR-A and -B (Wong et al., 1989, J. Exp. Med. 169:847) (Fig. 34). A genomic library derived from the DNA of an individual homozygous for the F allele was screened for CR1 clones by hybridization to cDNA probes that span the entire coding sequence. Restriction mapping of the overlapping phage clones that span the F allele was performed as previously described (Wong et al., 1989, J. Exp. Med. 169:847).

Construction of the expression plasmids and purification of soluble sCR1. A Pst I fragment which extends from SCR-5 in LHR-A to a corresponding position in LHR-B was isolated from the plasmid pBSABCD that contains the complete coding sequence of the F allotype of CR1 (Example 8.1, supra). This was inserted into piABCD (Example 8.2, supra) which had been linearized by partial digestion with Pst I, resulting in the creation of a fifth LHR with coding sequences identical to that of LHR-B. A clone named piABBCD with an in-frame insertion was selected by restriction mapping, and the segment encoding the entire extracellular domain was excised by digestion with Xho I and Apa LI and treated with the Klenow DNA polymerase. The blunt ended fragment was ligated to the linkers, 5'-TGAGCTAGCTCA-3', digested with

-139-

1983, J. Clin. Invest. 72:685; Dykman et al., 1983, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 80:1698; Dykman et al., 1984, J. Exp. Med. 159:691; Dykman et al., 1985, J. Immunol. 134:1787; Wong et al., 1986, J. Exp. Med. 164:1531; Holers et al., 1987, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A. 84:2459). There are four LHR in the F (or A) allotype of ~250 kD, termed LHR-A, -B, -C, and -D, respectively, 5' to 3' (Examples 6 and 7, supra; Wong et al., 1989, J. Exp. Med. 169:847). While the first two SCR in LHR-A determine its ability to bind C4b, the corresponding units in LHR-B and -C determine their higher affinities for C3b (Example 9, supra). Analysis of the gene encoding the larger S (or B) allotype of ~290 kD by restriction mapping of genomic phage clones revealed a fifth LHR that is a chimera of the 5' half of LHR-B and the 3' half of LHR-A and is predicted to contain a third C3b binding site (Wong et al., 1989, J. Exp. Med. 169:847). The smallest F' (or C) allotype of CR1 of ~210 kD, found in increased incidence in patients with SLE and associated with patients in multiple lupus families (Dykman et al., 1984, J. Exp. Med. 159:691; Van Dyne et al., 1987, Clin. Exp. Immunol. 68:570), may have resulted from the deletion of one LHR and may be impaired in its capacity to bind efficiently to immune complexes coated with complement fragments. The data presented infra define the molecular basis of the F' allele by using intron probes specific for each LHR to analyze an EcoRV restriction fragment length polymorphism (RFLP) of the CR1 that is present in individuals who express this allotype. To provide an explanation for the apparent association of the F' allotype with SLE, soluble SCR1 variants having one, two or three C3b recognition sites and corresponding to the predicted structures of the F', F, S allotypes, respectively, were compared for their abilities to bind dimeric ligand, to act as cofactor for the cleavage of C3b, and to inhibit the alternative and classical pathway C3 and C5 convertases.



numbers of LHR. The F allotype has four LHR, named LHR-A, -B, -C, -D, 5' to 3'. The site in LHR-A preferentially binds C4b, and those in LHR-B and -C prefer C3b. A previous study revealed the presence of a fifth LHR with sequences similar to LHR-B and a third C3b binding site in the S allotype of higher molecular weight. In the present study, an 18 kb EcoRV fragment that was associated with the expression of the lower molecular weight F' allotype hybridized with a unique pattern of cDNA and intron probes specific for LHR-C. Deletion of LHR-B and one C3b binding site was proposed as the mechanism for the appearance of this F'-specific fragment. The molecular mechanism for the association of the F' allotype with SLE was explored by functional comparisons of soluble sCR1 having one, two or three C3b binding sites. While these three variants did not exhibit any significant differences in their capacities to act as cofactors for the cleavage of monomeric C3b, their relative binding of dimeric ligand varied over 100 fold. Furthermore, the variant with only one C3b binding site was at least 10 fold less effective in the inhibition of the alternative pathway C3 and C5 convertases. These observations suggest that the F' allotype may be impaired in its capacity to bind opsonized immune complexes, to inhibit the formation of the alternative pathway C3 and C5 convertase, and perhaps to mediate other CR1-dependent cellular responses. They also demonstrate that certain functions of a CR1 molecule may be enhanced by increasing the valency of the C3b binding sites.

30

#### 16.1. INTRODUCTION

Four allotypic forms of CR1 that differ in size by 30 to 50 kD increments have been described. The transcripts that are associated with each allotype also differ in increments of ~1.4 kb, indicating that their primary sequences vary in the number of LHR (Wong et al.,

35

-137-

TABLE XIII

COMPARATIVE ANTI-HEMOLYTIC ACTIVITY  
OF sCR-1/APSAC, APSAC AND sCR-1\*

Dilution	Final s-CR1 conc. (ng/ml)	Percent inhibition of control hemolysis		
		sCR-1/APSAC	sCR-1	APSAC
1: 500	465	97.5 (1.1)	96.8 (1.2)	0
1: 2500	93	90.9 (0.7)	90.6 (1.3)	0
1: 5000	46.5	81.5 (2.3)	82.6 (2.5)	ND
1:12500	18.6	54.6 (2.4)	51.4 (2.6)	0
1:50000	4.65	11.0 (2.4)	13.2 (0.6)	0

\*Figures in brackets are standard errors from quadruplicate determinations.

Curve fitting of the data in Table XII gave values for the concentration of sCR-1 which inhibited hemolysis by 50% of  $15.7 \pm 3.0$  mg/ml and  $16.0 \pm 2.9$  ng/ml for sCR-1/APSAC and sCR-1 alone. These figures are not different and the results indicate that the activity of sCR-1 is unaffected by co-formulation with an APSAC pharmaceutical dosage form.

16. EXAMPLE: MOLECULAR DEFINITION OF THE F' ALLOTYPE OF HUMAN CR1: LOSS OF A C3b BINDING SITE IS ASSOCIATED WITH ALTERED FUNCTION

Human CR1 is composed of tandem long homologous repeating (LHR) segments that encode separate binding sites for C3b or C4b. Homologous recombination with unequal crossover has been proposed as the genetic mechanism that gave rise to the CR1 alleles that differ in their total

-136-

6-Aminohexanoic acid

1.4 mg

(all figures are subject to normal analytical variances)

5 The solutions were mixed well and the vial frozen at -78°C using solid CO<sub>2</sub>. The product was lyophilised at 2-3 mbar/-60°C (condenser temp) for 24 hours and the vial restoppered and stored at -70°C. On reconstitution, the vial was dissolved in 0.1 M Hepes, 0.15 M NaCl pH 7.4 (1.0 ml) and held on ice. Assays dilutions were made into this Hepes buffer. As controls, a vial of APSAC alone (same batch) was reconstituted in the same way and a freshly thawed sample of sCR-1 (same batch) was also tested. The samples were assayed for inhibition of complement-mediated hemolysis according to the method described in section 13.2.1 with the results given in the Table XIII below.

10

15

20

25

30

35

-135-

to necrosis are intravascular accumulation of neutrophils and microvascular endothelial cell injury (VanBenthuyssen et al., 1987, J. Clin. Invest. 79:265), both of which may be a consequence of complement activation. The present finding of a myocardial protective effect of sCR1 supports the possibility of a central role for complement, extending earlier studies in which complement was depleted with cobra venom factor, and offers a means by which the tissue-sparing potential of thrombolytic therapy may be enhanced.

#### 14.3.2. CONCLUSIONS

The results indicate that sCR1 treatment is effective in reducing reperfusion injury in vivo and in ameliorating the effects of myocardial infarction. To the extent that reperfusion injury can be ameliorated, the absolute amount of salvaged myocardium can be increased and the time window for which reperfusion is clinically useful can be extended. Treatment with sCR1 should be a useful concomitant therapy with thrombolytics as described in the next section or balloon coronary angioplasty during acute infarction.

#### 15. EXAMPLE: CO-FORMULATION OF SOLUBLE COMPLEMENT RECEPTOR 1 (sCR-1) WITH p-ANISOYLATED HUMAN PLASMINOGEN-STREPTOKINASE-ACTIVATOR COMPLEX (APSAC)

Purified sCR-1 prepared as described in section 12.2 [0.93 mg in sterile Dulbecco's phosphate-buffered saline, 1.0 ml], was added to a vial of APSAC which had been reconstituted in sterile water (4.0 ml). The APSAC preparation contained the following:

APSAC:	30 units
D-Mannitol	100 mg
Human Serum Albumin E.P.	30 mg
p-Amidinophenyl p'-anisate.HCl	0.15 mg
L-Lysine.HCl	35 mg

The localization of C5b-9 complexes along endothelial surfaces suggests that these cells may be the primary site of complement activation in the pathogenesis of reflow injury to ischemic myocardium, and contrasts with the more diffuse distribution of complement proteins throughout infarcted myocardium 24 hours following coronary artery occlusion (McManus et al., 1983, Lab. Invest. 48:436). While the latter may simply reflect the capacity of necrotic tissue to activate complement, the former may indicate that ischemically stressed endothelium acquires a complement-activating function. Complement activation by endothelial cells would be an especially potent stimulus for the early localization of neutrophils to ischemic myocardium, with C5a activating intravascular leukocytes and causing their rapid upregulation of cellular receptors, including CR1 and CR3 (Fearon & Collins, 1983, J. Immunol. 130:370; Arnaout et al., 1984, J. Clin. Invest. 74:1291). The latter receptor has been shown to promote the attachment of neutrophils to complement-activating endothelial cells bearing the ligand for CR3, iC3b (Marks et al., 1989, Nature 339:314). Therefore, suppression of complement activation by sCR1 may account for the decreased numbers of neutrophils apparently adherent to endothelial cells.

Reperfusion of ischemic myocardium by thrombolytic agents reduces infarct size, improves left ventricular function, and reduces mortality if established within a few hours of coronary artery occlusion (Guerci et al., 1987, N. Engl. J. Med. 317:1613; ISIS-2 Collaborative Group, 1988, Lancet ii:49; Van de Werf & Arnold, 1988, Br. Med. J. 279:1374). However, the potential benefits of reperfusion may not be fully achieved because reflow into myocardium that is severely ischemic, but not irreversibly injured, may induce necrosis (Becker & Ambrosio, 1987, Prog. Cardiovasc. Dis. 30:23; Braunwald & Kloner, 1985, J. Clin. Invest. 76:713). Two events thought to be causally related

-133-

1981) with a mouse monoclonal antibody to the rat C5b-9 membrane attack complex (Schulze et al., 1989, Kidney Int. 35:60). A mouse peroxidase-antiperoxidase (PAP) system was used for the immunostaining as described. All steps of the procedure were preceded by three 10-minute washings in 0.05 M Tris-buffered saline. The sections were fixed in acetone and treated with 0.5 percent  $H_2O_2$ -methanol solution for 5 minutes, 4 percent heat-inactivated goat serum for 1 hour; and they were then sequentially incubated at room temperature with the primary, mouse monoclonal antibodies at 2  $\mu$ g/ml for 18 hours, with affinity-purified F(ab')<sub>2</sub> goat antiserum to mouse antibody (Organon-Tecknika, West Chester, PA) for 60 minutes, and with mouse PAP for 60 minutes. The slides were developed with 3,3'-diaminobenzidine tetrahydrochloride and counterstained with Gill's hematoxylin 3. In the NBT-negative, infarcted areas of the control rats (n = 7), the C5b-9 complex was present primarily along the endothelium of capillaries and venules, but not in the myocardial fibers. In contrast, in rats that had received sCR1 (n = 8), the NBT-negative areas were consistently reduced in size, and little or no C5b-9 complex was detectable in these regions, as exemplified by the representative sections shown.

Quantitation of leukocytes (Ambrosio et al., 1989, Circulation 80:1846) in these serial sections revealed that within infarct zones of control rats there were  $195 \pm 28$  leukocytes per square millimeter (150 high-power fields; n = 3), which were almost exclusively within capillaries and venules. Corresponding sections from the hearts of rats that had received sCR1 had only  $83 \pm 3$  leukocytes per square millimeter (n = 4; P = 0.006), indicating that suppression of complement activation was associated with decreased accumulation of this inflammatory cell type.

mortem. The structure was released successfully in all rats except two of the sCR1 treated animals. Analysis of all survivors, including the two rats in whom reperfusion was not achieved, demonstrated that treatment with sCR1 reduced the size of myocardial infarction from a mean of  $16 \pm 2$  percent of the left ventricular mass in the control rats to  $9 \pm 2$  percent in the sCR1 group ( $P < 0.01$ ). The frequency of transmural infarction also was lower in the sCR1-treated (6 of 25) than in the control rats (12 of 24) ( $P < 0.04$ ).

The infarct segment thickness summed over four sections of hearts from all rats treated with sCR1 was  $7.8 \pm 0.4$  mm, which was not significantly different from that of all untreated animals  $7.3 \pm 0.4$  mm, but slightly less than that of the remote, uninfarcted interventricular septum from the hearts of these two groups of rats (sCR1 rats,  $9.3 \pm 0.2$  mm; untreated rats,  $9.4 \pm 0.2$  mm). There was also no difference in the intraventricular cavity size of these two groups (sCR1 rats,  $64.9 \pm 3.6$  mm<sup>3</sup>; untreated rats,  $68.9 \pm 2.6$  mm<sup>3</sup>). Therefore, sCR1 suppresses myocardial infarct size but does not interfere with healing in a manner that causes ventricular dilation and left ventricular wall thinning, as judged from observation of hearts one week after infarction.

To determine whether suppression of tissue damage by sCR1 was associated with inhibition of complement activation by ischemic myocardium, another group of buffer-treated ( $n = 7$ ) and sCR1-treated rats ( $n = 8$ ) was subjected to the same ischemia-reperfusion protocol, and the animals were killed 3 hours after reperfusion. The hearts were assessed by nitroblue tetrazolium (NBT) staining (Lillie, R.D., 1965, Histopathologic Technic and Practical Histochemistry, McGraw-Hill, New York ed:3:378) to delineate regions of irreversible injury from viable myocardium, and by immunoperoxidase staining (DeLellis, in Basic Techniques of Immunohistochemistry, DeLellis, Ed., Masson, New York,

1989, Circulation 80:1846) that may require complement activation (Maroko et al., 1978, J. Clin. Invest. 61:661; Crawford et al., 1988, Circulation 78:1449). Animals were divided into groups at random and were given bolus intravenous injections of phosphate-buffered saline alone (n = 29) or containing 1 mg of sCR1 (n = 31) immediately before occlusion of the left coronary artery by suture ligation. After 35 minutes, the sutures were released, the thorax closed, and the animals were returned to their cages for 7 days, when they were killed and the myocardial infarct was measured (Weisman et al., 1988, Circulation 78:186); the 7-day interval provided a reliable assessment of infarct size and permitted analysis of possible adverse effects of sCR1 on infarct healing. The aortas of hearts that had been excised from rats under methoxyflurane anesthesia were cannulated, and the coronary arteries were perfused first with Krebs Henseleit solution and then with 30 mM KCl for diastolic arrest. After fixation by intracoronary perfusion and immersion in 10 percent buffered formalin, 2 mm transverse sections of the hearts were histologically analyzed by digitizing the areas of the normal, total infarcted and transmurally infarcted left ventricular myocardium. The summed values of the fractional areas of all slices were used to calculate myocardial infarct size and the ratio of transmural necrosis to total necrosis. All procedures and care of the animals were in accordance with institutional guidelines. Survival rates in the group given buffer alone (24 of 29) and the sCR1-treated group (25 of 31) were similar, with deaths occurring immediately after coronary artery ligation in all but one of the control rats. Ligation of the coronary artery was judged to be successful in 22 animals in each group that met all of the following criteria: immediate electrocardiographic changes compatible with ischemia; cyanosis of the anterior left ventricular wall; and histologic evidence of myocardial necrosis post



#### 14.3. SCR1 REDUCES INFARCT SIZE IN RATS WITH REPERFUSED INFARCTED MYOCARDIUM

As described herein, SCR1 which was able to inhibit the activity of the complement pathway C3/C5 convertase in vitro was also able to reduce the extent of reperfusion injury in an in vivo rat myocardial infarct model.

Myocardial infarction can be induced in a rat by coronary ligation. If established within the first few hours after myocardial infarction, reperfusion has been shown to reduce the infarct size, to improve the left ventricular function, and to reduce mortality (Braunwald, E. and Kloner, R.A., 1985, J. Clin. Invest. 76:1713-1719). However, reperfusion to a myocardium that is severely ischemic but not irreversibly injured, can itself produce and extend injury. The mechanisms responsible for the reperfusion-induced injury may include injury mediated by oxygen free radicals and cellular calcium overload. Leukocytes acting either alone or in concert with microvascular endothelial cells may contribute to this injury. Complement activation may be involved in this process (Rossen, R.D., et al., 1985, Cir. Res. 57:119-130; Crawford, M.H., et al., 1988, Circulation 78:1449-1458).

##### 14.3.1. SUPPRESSION BY SCR1 OF COMPLEMENT ACTIVATION AND MYOCARDIAL REPERFUSION INJURY IN RATS

We administered SCR1 to rats subjected to transient myocardial ischemia with subsequent reperfusion. The mechanism of injury to ischemic, but not irreversibly damaged, reperfusion myocardium involves a leukocyte-dependent inflammatory reaction (Romson et al., 1983, Circulation 67:1016; Martin et al., 1988, Circ. Res. 63:483; Kraemer & Mullane, 1989, J. Pharmacol. Exp. Therap. 251:620; Litt et al., 1989, Circulation 80:1816; Ambrosio et al.,

TABLE XII  
PHARMACOKINETIC STUDIES OF TP10-HD\*\*

	2-378	2-592	2-709	2-403	2-431
SPECIES	Rat	Rat	Rat	Monkey	Monkey
Number	12	4	4	2	2
TP10-HD	Hot only	Hot + Cold	Hot + Cold	Hot + Cold	Cold only
Sampling Time	5 min - 72 hr	1-30 min	1-60 min	1 min - 24 hr	1 min - 24 hr
Half Life*	$t_{1/2} = 3.07$ hr	$t_{1/2} = 3.9$ min	$t_{1/2} = 4.3$ min	$t_{1/2} = 6-11$ min $t_{1/2} = 4-4.3$ hr	$t_{1/2} = 9.13$ min (1 mg/kg) $t_{1/2} = 29.0$ min (10 mg/kg)

\*The half-lives were determined by  $y = mx + b$ , where  $y$  = value at  $t_y$ ,  $m$  = slope,  $x = t_x$ ,  $b$  = extrapolated  $t_0$ .

\*\*Methods used for determining blood levels of SCR1 included measuring total radioactive counts (study 2-378), measuring TCA precipitable counts (studies 2-592, 2-709, 2-403) and reactivity in a CR1 ELISA as described in section 11.15 supra (studies 2-592, 2-709, 2-403 and 2-431).

-128-

rat, 126-153 million cpm for monkey) or a mixture of  
unlabelled (about 1 mg/kg) and  $^{125}\text{I}$ -labelled SCR1. In study  
2-431, dose of 1 mg/kg or 10 mg/kg of unlabelled SCR1 were  
also tested in monkeys. Blood was collected from each  
5 animal at several time points within the sampling time  
indicated in Table XII. The clearance of SCR1 from the  
blood followed a biphasic pattern in rats and monkeys. The  
first phase ( $\alpha$ ) had a short half-life measured in minutes.  
This half-life was dose dependent as shown in monkey study  
10 2-431 where a 1 mg/kg dose gave  $t_{1/2\alpha}$  of 9.13 min and a 10  
mg/kg dose gave  $t_{1/2\alpha}$  of 29 min. The second phase ( $\beta$ )  
showed a much longer half-life measured in hours (see Table  
XII and figure 32). The results of the monkey studies  
indicated that there were no clinical signs of toxicity  
15 observed in monkeys associated with the administration of a  
single intravenous injection at doses of 1.0 and 10 mg/kg.

20 —

25

30

35

-127-

were sacrificed and blood was obtained from vena cava puncture. 1-2 ml of sera from each rat was obtained by centrifugation at 1800 rpm for 10 minutes, and the amount of sCR1 in each sample was determined by CR1 ELISA. Two-fold dilutions of 1  $\mu$ g/ml of purified sCR1 spiked into control rat serum or detergent lysates of hemoglobin-free red blood cell ghosts ( $1.6 \times 10^8$  ghosts/ml) were used as CR1 standards. The results are shown in Table XI.

10

TABLE XI

PHARMOCOKINETIC DATA  
ON SERUM CONCENTRATIONS OF  
INJECTED sCR1 WITH TIME

15

Time After  
Intravenous  
Injection

sCR1 Concentration  
( $\mu$ g/ml)

Control

0.01

2 min

0.17

5 min

0.80

20

10 min

1.01

60 min

0.38

24 hrs

0.49

25

These data indicate that sCR1 can be detected 24 hours following intravenous injection. At 24 hours, the level of sCR1 in the serum was 50% of the peak level that was observed 10 minutes post-injection.

30

Additional studies in Sprague Dawley rats and cynomolgus monkeys (Table XII) were performed to further characterize the pharmacokinetics of in vivo administered sCR1. Each animal received a single intravenous injection of either  $^{125}$ I-labelled sCR1 alone (14-28 million cpm for

35

-126-

31a). These data indicate that soluble CR1 administration caused an inhibition of damage to the endothelial cells and an inhibition of the inflammatory reaction.

In order to determine the minimum effective dosage of sCR1 that is required to block a RPAR in the above ovalbumin rat model, ten-fold serial dilutions (neat, 1/10, 1/100, 1/1,000 and 1/10,000) of the 0.75 mg/ml sCR1 stock were tested. Each sCR1 dilution was mixed with an equal volume of neat or one-half dilution of anti-ovalbumin antibody. Each site was injected with a total of 80  $\mu$ l. The ability of sCR1 to inhibit RPAR was dose dependent, with effective reduction of edema observed at 300 ng per site (Table X).

15

TABLE X

EFFECT OF DOSAGE ON THE INHIBITION OF RPAR BY sCR1

	<u>sCR1 (<math>\mu</math>g/site)</u>	<u>Extent of Remaining RPAR</u>
20	30	+/-
	3	+/-
	0.3	+/-
	0.03	++
25	0.003	++++
	0	++++

30

14.2. PHARMACOKINETICS OF IN VIVO ADMINISTERED sCR1

35

The biological half-life of sCR1 in vivo was determined as follows. Rats of similar age (6 weeks) and body weight (110-125 g) were injected intravenously with 250  $\mu$ g of sCR1 in 0.35 ml. At 2 minutes, 5 minutes, 10 minutes, 60 minutes, and 24 hours post-injection, the rats

#### 14.1.2. RESULTS

A weak RPAR reaction (e.g., edema and erythema) began to be visible after 3 to 5 hours following intradermal injection of anti-ovalbumin antibody. The intensity of the reaction gradually increased until the size of the reaction reached 3-5 mm in diameter after 24 hours (Fig. 30b). No reactions were observed in the rat skin where only non-immune rabbit IgG or PBS was injected.

Under microscopic examination of the tissue sections prepared from the site of the lesion, many acute inflammatory cells were visible in the dermis, particularly around the blood vessels (Fig. 31b). This is typically recognized as vasculitis and perivascularitis. The tissue indicated a typical inflammatory condition with extensive infiltration of PMN outside of the blood vessels, the presence of erythrocytes in the connective tissue, and the loosening of collagen fibers.

#### 14.1.3. EFFECT OF INTRADERMAL ADMINISTRATION OF SOLUBLE CR1

A mixture of purified sCR1 was prepared by combining 40  $\mu$ l of 0.75 mg/ml sCR1 with an equal volume of anti-ovalbumin or normal rabbit IgG or PBS. Either the sCR1:anti-ovalbumin mixture or the sCR1:rabbit IgG mixture, or the sCR1: PBS mixture was injected intradermally into intravenously ovalbumin primed rats. Barely visible lesions developed in the injection sites that received sCR1 plus anti-ovalbumin antibody (Fig. 30a). As expected, no lesions developed in the injection sites that received sCR1: rabbit IgG or sCR1:PBS. When sections of tissue surrounding the sCR1:anti-ovalbumin injection sites were examined microscopically, clusters of PMN and mononuclear cells could be found surrounding the venules, but there was no extensive infiltration of PMN or extravasation of erythrocytes (Fig.

-124-

When tested in a rat RPAR model, soluble CR1s were able to block the local inflammatory reaction. The mechanism of the action of this soluble CR1 function in vivo may be mediated through the inhibition of complement pathway enzymes.

5

#### 14.1.1. MATERIALS AND METHODS

Female five week old Sprague Dawley rats (CD strain) weighing about 100-125 grams (Charles River Laboratories, Wilmington, MA) were anesthetized with an intraperitoneal injection of 0.1 to 0.3 ml Avertin solution. This solution was a 1:2 dilution of a stock solution made with 1 g tribromoethanol in 15 ml Amel ethanol. The fur on the backs of the animals was shaved. Next, the tail was warmed, first with warm water and then with a heat lamp. Using a 1 ml syringe, 0.35 ml of ovalbumin (Calbiochem Corp., San Diego, CA) at 5 mg/ml in 0.15 M phosphate buffered saline (PBS) was injected intravenously into the tail vein, about 1-2 inches from the tip of the tail. Five minutes later, the rats were injected intradermally with 0.08 ml of 20 mg/ml rabbit Ig fraction of anti-ovalbumin antibody having an antibody titer of 4 mg/ml (Organon Teknika Corp., Cappel Division, West Chester, PA) or with 0.08 ml of 20 mg/ml rabbit IgG (Sigma Chemical Co., St. Louis, MO), or with PBS. Each injection was performed in duplicate and the areas around the injection were circled with a marker pen. The rats were then monitored at 1, 4, and 18 hours. After 24 hours, the rats were killed by submerging them in dry ice for 3 minutes. Skin samples were dissected from the injected sites. One of the duplicate samples was fixed in 10% formalin for paraffin embedding and the other frozen for cryostat sections. Tissue sections were prepared and stained with hematoxylin and eosin.

35

-123-

$$\text{INHIBITION} = \frac{[(\text{CB sample}) - (\text{CB no sCR1})]}{[(\text{CB no IgG}) - (\text{CB no sCR1})]}$$

### 13.3.2. RESULTS

The activity of purified sCR1 was assayed by testing its ability to inhibit C5a and C3a production in an activated human serum sample.

As indicated by Figure 29, under the conditions tested, purified sCR1 was able to maximally inhibit C5a production by 100% and C3a by 60%. Inhibition of 50% was observed at sCR1 concentrations of 5 µg/ml for C5a production and 15-20 µg/ml for C3a production. The data suggest that recombinant sCR1 inhibits the C5 convertase more efficiently than the C3 convertase.

## 14. EXAMPLE: DEMONSTRATION OF FUNCTIONAL IN VIVO THERAPEUTIC ACTIVITY OF SOLUBLE CR1

### 14.1. SOLUBLE CR1 DEMONSTRATES IN VIVO FUNCTION IN A REVERSED PASSIVE ARTHUS REACTION

The Arthus reaction is a classic immunologically induced inflammatory response caused by injecting antigen locally that then reacts with antibodies in circulation. The major biological response is characterized by immune complex deposition, complement fixation, polymorphonuclear (PMN) leukocyte infiltration, release of lysosomal enzymes, vasoactive amine, and local tissue damage (Uriuhura, T. and Movat, H.Z., 1966, Exp. Mol. Pathol. 5:539-558; Cochrane, C.G., 1968, Adv. Immunol. 9:97-162). A modification of the direct Arthus reaction, the reversed passive Arthus reaction (RPAR), has been used as a model for identifying anti-inflammatory agents (Pflum, L.R. and Graeme, M.L., 1979, Agents and Actions 9:184-189). In a RPAR, antibody is injected locally and antigen is present in the circulation.



-122-

13.3. INHIBITION OF C3a AND C5a PRODUCTION13.3.1. METHODS

The ability to inhibit complement was also tested  
5 by assaying for specific inhibition of C3a and C5a  
production. For all experiments, a single human serum pool,  
to be used as a source of complement, was aliquoted and  
stored frozen at -70°C. Human IgG was heat-aggregated,  
aliquoted, and stored frozen at -70°C. For each experiment,  
10 serum aliquots were equilibrated at 37°C with varying  
concentrations of sCR1 to be tested. The complement pathway  
was initiated by the addition of aggregated human IgG.  
Control samples containing no IgG were always included.  
After a fixed reaction time of 15 minutes (determined in an  
15 earlier time-course study to provide a convenient time  
interval during which the production of C5a or C3a is nearly  
complete, i.e., greater than 90%), the levels of the  
released complement peptides (C5a or C3a) were determined by  
radioimmunoassay using commercially available  
20 radioimmunoassay (RIA) kits (C5a RIA, Amersham Cat. No.  
RPA.520; C3a RIA, Amersham Cat. No. RPA.518) in modified  
procedures.

Since a competitive immunoassay was used,  
complement peptide (C5a and C3a) concentrations varied  
25 inversely with the counts. The counts bound (CB) for a  
sample were defined as the total counts (in counts per  
minute, cpm) measured in the pellet.

The y-axis in Figure 29 represents the fraction  
inhibition. The fraction inhibition is equal to the counts  
30 bound (CB) for a "sample", less the CB in the "sample with  
no sCR1", divided by the CB for the "no IgG control" less  
the CB in the "sample with no sCR1."

-121-

TABLE IX

HEMOLYSIS OF SENSITIZED SHEEP RBC USING  
COMPLEMENT FROM VARIOUS ANIMAL SERA

5	<u>Animal</u>	<u>Final Conc. Serum Used</u>	<u>Inhibition by sCRI</u>	<u>Inhibition (IH)** (ghost/ml)</u>	<u>IH<sub>50</sub>** (ghost/ml)</u>
	guinea pig*	1:500	Yes	66%(2.6x10 <sup>9</sup> )	1.0x10 <sup>9</sup>
10	human	1:500	Yes	94%(2.5x10 <sup>9</sup> )	2.0x10 <sup>8</sup>
	human	1:312	Yes	94%(1.2x10 <sup>9</sup> )	1.0x10 <sup>7</sup>
	rat	1:200	Yes	85%(2.6x10 <sup>9</sup> )	2.4x10 <sup>8</sup>
15	rat*	1:200	Yes	77%(3.8x10 <sup>9</sup> )	1.0x10 <sup>9</sup>
	dog	1:50	No		
	rabbit*	1:20	No		
	mouse*	1:5	No		

20 \* lyophilized sera obtained commercially (Sigma Chemical Co., St. Louis, Mo.)

\*\* as defined in text (Section 13.2)

25 Both guinea pig and rat complement appeared to be inhibited  
by human sCRI. The lack of clear inhibition for other  
species may reflect (a) the inappropriateness of using  
rabbit antibodies and sheep erythrocytes in the assay  
30 system, or (b) the high concentration of serum required for  
hemolysis in this system.

-120-

producing 50% inhibition in the hemolytic assay at  $1.6 \times 10^8$  ghosts/ml. This indicated that the purification procedure was not substantially diminishing the functional activity of the final sCR1 product.

5           To determine if purified sCR1 could be stored frozen, an aliquot was stored at  $-70^\circ\text{C}$  for one week. The concentration of the frozen sCR1 was the same as the nonfrozen sCR1, as determined by absorbance at 280 nm and CR1 ELISA. The frozen sCR1 also had the same activity as  
10 the nonfrozen sCR1 as determined by inhibition of hemolysis.

          The ability of human recombinant sCR1 to inhibit hemolysis mediated by complement from several species is summarized in Table IX.

15

20

25

30

35

sample containing only human serum  $A_S$ , minus the absorbance of a sample containing only the red cells,  $A_0$ . Thus,  $A_{\max} = A_S - A_0$ . The difference between the absorbance of an erythrocyte sample containing both human serum and sCR1, and the absorbance of a cell sample containing sCR1 only, was defined as  $A_{\text{sample}}$ . The inhibition, IH, was expressed as the fraction  $(A_{\max} - A_{\text{sample}} / A_{\max})$ , and  $IH_{50}$  was defined as the concentration of sCR1 required to produce a value of  $IH = 1/2$ . To monitor chromatography fractions, the serum-free controls were not included and anti-complement activity was monitored qualitatively as a decrease in the absorbance at 410 nm of the sample.

The hemolytic assay described above was also used to assess the capability of human recombinant sCR1 to inhibit sheep red cell lysis by complement from other species, such as guinea pig and rat. For each species, fresh-frozen serum or freshly lyophilized serum or plasma was used as a complement source. In some cases sera were obtained commercially (Sigma Chemical Company, St. Louis, MO).

The serum was first titered for its capacity to lyse activated red cells. The greatest dilution which yielded at least 80% maximal red cell lysis was chosen to assess the effects of added human sCR1. The assay was then performed as described above, substituting animal for human serum at the preferred dilution.

### 13.2.2. RESULTS

As indicated in Figure 28, purified sCR1 inhibited classical complement-mediated lysis by 50% at a sCR1 concentration of 0.12  $\mu\text{g/ml}$ . The ability of antibody affinity purified sCR1 to inhibit the hemolytic assay was compared to that of unpurified material (sCR1 containing cell culture supernatant). The purified sCR1 had activity comparable to that of the unpurified sCR1, with both

-118-

#### 13.1.2.4. SCR1 PRESENT DURING COMPLEMENT ACTIVATION BLOCKS C5a GENERATION

Zymosan induced activation of human complement in the presence of soluble CR1 showed reduced C5a activity as measured with the DCFDA assay. As can be seen in Fig. 27, the 1:16 dilution of human plasma activated in the presence of sCR1 generated 70% less fluorescence intensity increase in the neutrophils as the 1:16 diluted plasma activated without sCR1 present. This implies inhibition of C5a generation by sCR1. Further optimization of the DCFDA assay and plasma collection should result in a more dynamic and sensitive assay of soluble CR1 activity.

#### 13.2. INHIBITION OF COMPLEMENT MEDIATED HEMOLYSIS

15

##### 13.2.1. METHODS

The ability to inhibit complement was tested by assaying for inhibition of complement-mediated red cell lysis (hemolysis). The inhibition of hemolysis was determined as a function of soluble CR1 concentration. The sCR1 samples to be tested were diluted in 0.1 M Hepes buffer (0.15 N NaCl, pH 7.4), and 50  $\mu$ l were added to each well of a V-bottom microtiter plate typically in triplicate. Human serum, used as the complement source, was diluted 1 to 125 in Hepes buffer, and 50  $\mu$ l were added to each well. Next, commercially available sheep erythrocytes with anti-sheep antibody (Diamedix Cat. No. 789-002) were used as received and added 100  $\mu$ l/well to initiate the complement pathway leading to hemolysis. The plate was incubated for 60 minutes at 37°C and then centrifuged at 500 x g for 10 minutes. The supernatants were removed and placed in a flat-bottom microtiter plate. The extent of hemolysis was measured as a function of the sample absorbance at 410 nm. The maximal absorbance (corresponding to maximal hemolysis),  $A_{\text{max}}$ , was obtained from the absorbance of an erythrocyte

-117-

13.1.2. RESULTS13.1.2.1. C5a INDUCES AN OXYGEN BURST IN HUMAN  
NEUTROPHILS WHICH CAN BE MEASURED  
USING DCFDA

5                Figure 26 shows a rapid increase in fluorescence  
intensity of the human neutrophils after stimulation with  
purified C5a. Within four minutes after addition of C5a (20  
ng/ml final concentration), the neutrophils were 10-fold  
brighter than control DCFDA-loaded neutrophils. By 20  
10 minutes, the neutrophils were 20-fold as bright as controls.  
This assay seems to be a sensitive indicator of C5a.

13.1.2.2. HUMAN SERUM BLOCKS THE OXYGEN BURST  
EFFECTS OF PURIFIED C5a ON NEUTROPHILS

15                No increase in fluorescent intensity was observed  
in neutrophils loaded with DCFDA and incubated with purified  
C5a diluted in human serum. This effect may be due to  
platelet derived growth factor (PDGF) released from  
platelets during clotting. It has been shown that low  
20 levels of PDGF can inhibit C5a-induced neutrophil activation  
(Wilson, E., et al., 1987, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA  
84:2213-2217).

13.1.2.3. HEPARINIZED PLASMA DOES NOT BLOCK  
THE EFFECTS OF C5a ON NEUTROPHILS

25                C5a diluted 1:1 in heparinized plasma induced an  
oxygen burst in DCFDA loaded neutrophils. Although not as  
dramatic as C5a in buffer, there was a ten-fold increase in  
fluorescent intensity after a 30 minute incubation with the  
neutrophils. The decreased signal may be caused by PDGF  
30 release during phlebotomy or plasma isolation. More gentle  
and rapid isolation of the plasma from the cellular  
components of blood may minimize the release of PDGF and  
allow for better C5a function.

35

-116-

#### 13.1.1.3. PREPARATION OF YEAST PARTICLES

Dried baker's yeast was resuspended in H<sub>2</sub>O, washed 2 times and boiled for 30 minutes. Particles were rewashed 2 times in H<sub>2</sub>O and resuspended at 0.5 grams/ml in H<sub>2</sub>O (Simpson, P.J., et al., supra).

#### 13.1.1.4. ACTIVATION OF NEUTROPHILS BY PURIFIED C5a

100  $\mu$ l of DCFDA-loaded cells were treated with RBC lysing buffer, washed one time in PBS-gelatin-glucose-EDTA and resuspended in 1.0 ml of PBS-gelatin-glucose. Fifty  $\mu$ l of purified C5a at 200 ng/ml or control was added to 0.5 ml of target cells at 37°C and analyzed on the flow cytometer at various time intervals.

#### 13.1.1.5. ACTIVATION OF NEUTROPHILS BY PURIFIED C5a IN HUMAN SERUM OR PLASMA

100  $\mu$ l of DCFDA-loaded cells were incubated with 50  $\mu$ l of C5a diluted 1:1 in human serum or heparinized plasma (100 ng/ml) or control at 37°C for 30 minutes. The RBC's were lysed out, and the neutrophils were analyzed on a flow cytometer.

#### 13.1.1.6. ACTIVATION OF NEUTROPHILS BY YEAST PARTICLE-ACTIVATED HUMAN SERUM OR PLASMA

425  $\mu$ l of fresh frozen serum and plasma plus 50  $\mu$ l of sCR1 or control were incubated with 25  $\mu$ l of yeast particles at 37°C for 30 minutes. The complement-activated and control samples were then centrifuged to remove the yeast particles. Ten 2-fold dilutions of each of these samples were performed in PBS-gelatin-glucose-EDTA. 50  $\mu$ l of each serial dilution of control and activated serum and plasma was added to 50  $\mu$ l of DCFDA-loaded target cells and incubated at 37°C for 30 minutes. The RBC's were then lysed out, and neutrophils were analyzed by flow cytometry.

-115-

activation. The activated neutrophil undergoes an oxidative burst creating highly toxic oxygen radicals. These and other potential toxins are released during neutrophil degranulation, damaging the surrounding tissue. Soluble CR1 may reduce the area of damaged tissue by preventing the generation of C3a and C5a, the complement components involved in neutrophil activation.

To monitor the ability of soluble CR1 to block the generation of C5a during complement activation in vitro, a bioassay which can quantitate the generation of oxygen radicals produced by neutrophils during a C5a induced oxygen burst was used (Bass, D.A., et al., 1983, J. Immunol. 130:1910-1917). This assay employs dichlorofluorescein diacetate (DCFDA), a lipid soluble molecule which can enter cells, become trapped, and turn highly fluorescent upon oxidation.

#### 13.1.1. MATERIALS AND METHODS

##### 13.1.1.1. MATERIALS

Fresh whole blood, human complement sources (Beth Israel Hospital, Boston, MA), dried Baker's yeast, PBS with 0.1% gelatin and 5 mM glucose, 100 mM EDTA, 10 mM DCFDA in HBSS (Kodak), Red blood cell (RBC) lysing buffer (Ortho Diagnostics), purified C5a (Sigma Chemical Co., St. Louis, MO), and soluble CR1 were used.

##### 13.1.1.2. PREPARATION OF NEUTROPHILS

Neutrophils were prepared as described by Bass (1983, J. Immunol. 130:1910-1917). 2.0 ml of whole blood was washed 3 times in PBS-gelatin-glucose, resuspended in 5 ml of 10  $\mu$ M DCFDA in HBSS plus 5 ml PBS-gelatin-glucose and incubated for 15 minutes at 37°C. Cells were then centrifuged and resuspended in 2.0 ml PBS-gelatin-glucose plus 5 mM EDTA.



The functional activity of purified sCR1 was tested by its ability to inhibit classical complement-mediated hemolysis by 50% at a purified sCR1 concentration of 0.25  $\mu$ g/ml. The purified soluble CR1 was also able to inhibit classical complement C5a production by 50% at 5  $\mu$ g/ml and C3a production by 50% at 13  $\mu$ g/ml (see Section 13, infra).

#### 12.2.2.4. CONCLUSIONS

As described supra, we developed an improved method for the purification of soluble CR1 that can easily be scaled up to produce the quantities of sCR1 needed for therapeutic applications. The basic elements of this procedure included a starting material that is already soluble, thus eliminating the requirement of solubilizing membrane bound CR1 with detergents. The reduction of fetal calf serum concentrations in the bioreactor cultures and/or the use of alternative culture medias in these cultures eliminated the need to remove high concentrations of extraneous proteins from the sCR1-containing starting material during subsequent purification. Furthermore, the development of an HPLC procedure for purification provided a method for large-scale purification. Either cation HPLC or a combination of cation HPLC followed by anion exchange HPLC can be used for purification. Substantially pure soluble CR1 in high yield can be achieved by this procedure in only 1 or 2 steps.

### 13. EXAMPLE: DEMONSTRATION OF IN VITRO ACTIVITY OF SOLUBLE CR1

#### 13.1. INHIBITION OF THE NEUTROPHIL OXIDATIVE BURST

In the reperfusion injury model of tissue damage incurred during a myocardial infarction, activated complement components induce neutrophil adhesion and

-113-

fractions were determined by ELISA and absorbance at 280 nm, and were pooled. The protein concentration of the pool was determined by absorbance at 280 nm ( $\epsilon(1\%)$  at 280 nm = 10, as estimated from the CR1c amino acid composition). Several  
5 tens of milligrams were purified from 100 ml of amplified culture supernatant.

As an example, 100 ml of culture supernatant from transfectant pBSCR1c/pTCSgpt clone 2 produced 22 mg of purified sCR1, as determined by absorbance at 280 nm, when  
10 purified by cation HPLC (Fig. 24). When monitored by CR1 ELISA, the yield was calculated to be 202% with another 13% in the flow-through or column wash fraction. The greater than 100% yield probably reflects matrix effects in the ELISA.

15 Given the rates that culture supernatant can be withdrawn from a bioreactor, it should be possible at this level of methotrexate amplification to produce about 100 mg of purified soluble CR1 per week per bioreactor. Some ways in which this level of production can be scaled up, include  
20 amplifying the starting cultures to a maximum extent with methotrexate prior to seeding the bioreactor, increasing the number of bioreactors in production at any one time, and using larger capacity HPLC columns.

#### 25 12.2.2.3. CHARACTERIZATION OF PURIFIED SOLUBLE CR1

The sCR1 containing peak fraction from the cation HPLC (Fig. 24) was further purified on an anion HPLC. The purity of the sCR1 material at the various steps was tested by SDS-PAGE (Fig. 25). The smaller bands seen in these  
30 heavily loaded gels represent fragments of sCR1 as determined by Western Blot analysis using anti-CR1 monoclonal antibodies, YZ1 or J3D3. The fragment sCR1 bands were not seen in most preparations.

35

-112-

high pressure liquid chromatography column (10 cm x 10 mm, Hydropore-SCX HPLC column from Rainin). The column was washed and eluted with a sodium chloride gradient developed using 0.02 M phosphate, 0.5 N NaCl, pH 7.0. The sCR1 eluted somewhere between 0.06 N and 0.25 N NaCl. Elution was monitored by absorbance at 280 nm and by ELISA.

#### 12.2.2.1.3. ANION EXCHANGE HPLC PROCEDURE

If desired, further purification of the cation HPLC purified sCR1 could be obtained by anion HPLC. Peak fractions from the cation HPLC were dialyzed into the starting buffer for anion HPLC. Samples were loaded and the column (Hydropore-AX from Rainin) was washed in 0.01 M phosphate pH 7.5. The column was eluted with a series of steps and gradients developed using 0.01 M phosphate, 0.5 N NaCl, pH 7.5. The sCR1 eluted somewhere between 0.0 N and 0.3 N NaCl. Elution was monitored as before for cation exchange HPLC. The concentrations and pH of the cation and anion HPLC column buffers are given as examples only. Other buffer concentrations, salt conditions, or pH conditions would also work.

#### 12.2.2.1.4. WESTERN BLOT ANALYSIS

Western blotting was performed using a modified procedure from Towbin, H., et al., 1979, Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA, 76:4350-4354. Briefly, purified sCR1 was run on a 4-20% SDS-PAGE, transferred to nitrocellulose, specifically probed with anti-CR1 (mouse mAb YZ-1 or J3D3), and detected with goat anti-mouse antibody conjugated with alkaline phosphatase.

#### 12.2.2.2. RESULTS

For a typical run, 50-100 ml of supernatant from a bioreactor culture were dialyzed into starting buffer and loaded onto a 10 cm x 10 mm cation exchange HPLC. The peak

-111-

(Fig. 24). This purified CR1 was also shown to be active by its ability to inhibit complement-mediated hemolysis as well as C5a and C3a production (Section 13, infra).

#### 12.2.2. CR1 PURIFICATION BY HPLC

##### 12.2.2.1. METHODS

##### 12.2.2.1.1. STARTING MATERIAL

When cultures were first established in the bioreactors, the levels of sCR1 production were lower than when the cultures had been growing for several months. Generally there was a period of several weeks before the cells in the bioreactor reached confluency and produced maximum levels of sCR1. Cell culture supernatants with low levels of sCR1 could be concentrated before purification by either ammonium sulfate precipitation or by ultrafiltration. Ammonium sulfate fractionation of supernatants over the range of 60 to 80% saturation precipitated sCR1 in essentially equivalent yields. The precipitate was dissolved in a minimum volume and dialysed into starting buffer for the cation exchange HPLC. Alternatively, the CHO cell culture supernatants could be concentrated by ultrafiltration and dialyzed into starting buffer for cation exchange chromatography.

As the bioreactors produced higher concentrations of soluble CR1, the CHO cell culture supernatants from these cultures could be dialyzed directly into starting buffer for cation exchange chromatography.

##### 12.2.2.1.2. CATION EXCHANGE HPLC PROCEDURE

Samples were dialyzed into starting buffer (0.02 M sodium phosphate, 0.06 N sodium chloride, pH 7.0) and then filtered through a 0.2  $\mu$ m filter to remove any particulate material. The sample was then loaded onto a cation exchange

-110-

be scaled up to produce even larger quantities of purified soluble CR1. In addition, they do not require harsh conditions for the elution and recovery of sCR1.

5           12.2.1. ANTIBODY AFFINITY COLUMN PURIFICATION

                  12.2.1.1. METHODS

                  For antibody affinity purification of sCR1, 100 mg of monoclonal antibody YZ-1 was covalently coupled to 7 mg of AffiGel-10 (BioRad, Richmond, CA) according to the  
10 manufacturer's instructions. CR1 containing supernatant from cell cultures was incubated with the immobilized YZ-1 in a flask rocking at 4°C overnight. The material was poured into a glass column and washed extensively with 10 mM Hepes, 0.1 M NaCl, pH 7. The sCR1 was eluted using 20 mM  
15 sodium phosphate, 0.7 M NaCl, pH 12 (Yoon, S.H. and Fearon, D.T., 1985, J. Immunol. 134:3332-3338). Eluted fractions were tested for the presence of protein using the Biorad Protein Assay (BioRad, Richmond, CA). Samples containing  
20 protein were immediately pooled and dialyzed in 0.1 M Hepes pH 7 overnight (2 x 1 liters) at 4°C. The sample was then dialyzed in PBS. Presence of sCR1 was analyzed by CR1 ELISA.

25                   12.2.1.2. RESULTS

                  Cell culture supernatant containing sCR1 produced by transfectant pBSCR1c/pTCSgpt clone 2 was loaded onto the anti-CR1 antibody affinity column and the peak sCR1  
fractions pooled. An aliquot of this purified material was  
30 run on a 4-20% SDS-PAGE gel (DAIICHI; Inc., polyacrylamide gels; modified procedure of Laemmli, U.K., 1970, Nature 227:680-685). Under reducing conditions, the apparent molecular weight of soluble CR1 was about 224,000 daltons

35

### 12.1.2. CONCLUSIONS

The above-described results indicated that sCR1 producing CHO cells could be maintained in a defined serum-free media. This resulted in a savings in the cost of culture media for large scale production runs. A further advantage was that purification of sCR1 from the cell culture supernatants was simplified, since no fetal calf serum proteins had to be removed.

### 12.2. PURIFICATION OF SOLUBLE CR1

With the advent of specific anti-CR1 antibodies, it became possible to replace the many chromatographic steps needed to produce purified CR1 with a simplified two step procedure. This increased the yields of CR1 proteins that could be obtained to approximately 1-5 mg CR1 per  $5.9 \times 10^{13}$  erythrocytes (Wong, W.W., et al., 1985, J. Immunol. Methods 82:303-313). However, since the reported purification was of membrane-bound forms of CR1, it was always necessary to solubilize the CR1 containing material in detergents.

Soluble CR1 produced by recombinant transfectants does not have to be solubilized with detergents for purification; it is already soluble. Although soluble CR1 can be purified by anti-CR1 antibody chromatography (see below), this procedure does not lend itself easily to large-scale production. The extent of scale-up is limited by the amount of anti-CR1 antibody that can be obtained for preparing the antibody matrix of the antibody purification columns. In addition, the high binding affinity of an antibody such as YZ-1 for CR1 means that rather harsh conditions, for example pH 12.2, have to be used to remove the bound sCR1 product from the antibody matrix (Wong, W.W., et al., 1985, J. Immunol. Methods 82:303-313).

To have the capacity of purifying very large quantities of soluble CR1, purification procedures involving HPLC columns were developed. These HPLC columns can easily

TABLE VIII

5 PRODUCTION OF sCR1 IN SERUM-FREE MEDIA SUPPLEMENTED WITH CHO GROWTH SUPPLEMENT VERSUS 10% FETAL CALF SERUM CONTAINING MEDIA*				
	Day 4	Day 7	Day 11	Day 14
10 Flask 1 CHO Growth Supplement Plus	5% FCS	1% FCS	0.5% FCS	0% FCS
	2.6	2.4	2.95	1.4
15 Flask 2 10% FCS	4.8	3.85	4.3	4.2
* expressed as $10^{10}$ ghosts/ml				

20

Cell growth and sCR1 production in recombinants were tested using a second source of serum-free media (CHO-1, Ventrex Laboratories, Inc., Portland, ME). Since it was not necessary to wean serum-grown cells into this media, 25 cells were thawed and cultured directly in the serum-free media. This media consists of a DME-F12 base and a growth additive. Equal numbers of cells were thawed and seeded into separate wells in a 24-well plate. After the cells had attached, the media was discarded, and either 10% fetal calf 30 serum containing media or serum-free media was added to appropriate wells. Each condition was performed in duplicate. Unlike the previously tested serum-free media, the CHO-1, Ventrex Laboratories media yielded similar levels of cell growth as did the fetal calf serum containing media.

35

-107-

2; 500 nM for clone 35) was used. Premixed gas (5% CO<sub>2</sub> in air) was bubbled into the reservoir medium through the oxygenator to maintain pH. Media recirculation, replacement and gas flow rates were adjusted to yield maximum production. Samples were harvested through inoculating ports, centrifuged at 1000 rpm for 10 minutes, filtered through a 0.22  $\mu$ M pore size filter, and kept at 4°C before purification. Harvest volume and frequency were increased gradually from 25 ml, three times per week at the beginning of the culture, to 40 ml, five times a week after 2-3 months. The production of sCR1 was assayed by a CR1 ELISA. The yields of clone 2 and clone 35 for the first month after inoculation were 66  $\mu$ g/day and 1060  $\mu$ g/day, respectively. These yields increased as the cultures became established.

15

#### 12.1.1. PRODUCTION OF sCR1 IN SERUM-FREE MEDIA

Two commercially available serum-free media were tested for their ability to support cell growth and production of sCR1. A confluent T75 flask of pBSCR1c/pTCSgpt clone 35 was divided into two T75 flasks. One flask was cultured with alpha MEM, supplemented with 10% fetal calf serum, L-glutamine, antibiotics, and 500 nM methotrexate. The other flask was weaned stepwise from 5%, 1%, 0.5% and no fetal calf serum in alpha MEM plus L-glutamine, antibiotics, 500 nM methotrexate plus HB CHO growth supplement (Hana Biologics, Inc., Alameda, CA). The cell growth and sCR1 production levels of the two flasks were compared. The growth of the cells in the serum-free media never reached confluency. The levels of sCR1 production are given in Table VIII. In each case, the level of sCR1 production was best when cells were grown in 10% fetal calf serum. For comparison, the levels found at day 14 in serum-free media were  $1.4 \times 10^{10}$  ghosts/ml as compared to  $4.2 \times 10^{10}$  ghosts/ml for 10% fetal calf serum supplemented media.



26/60

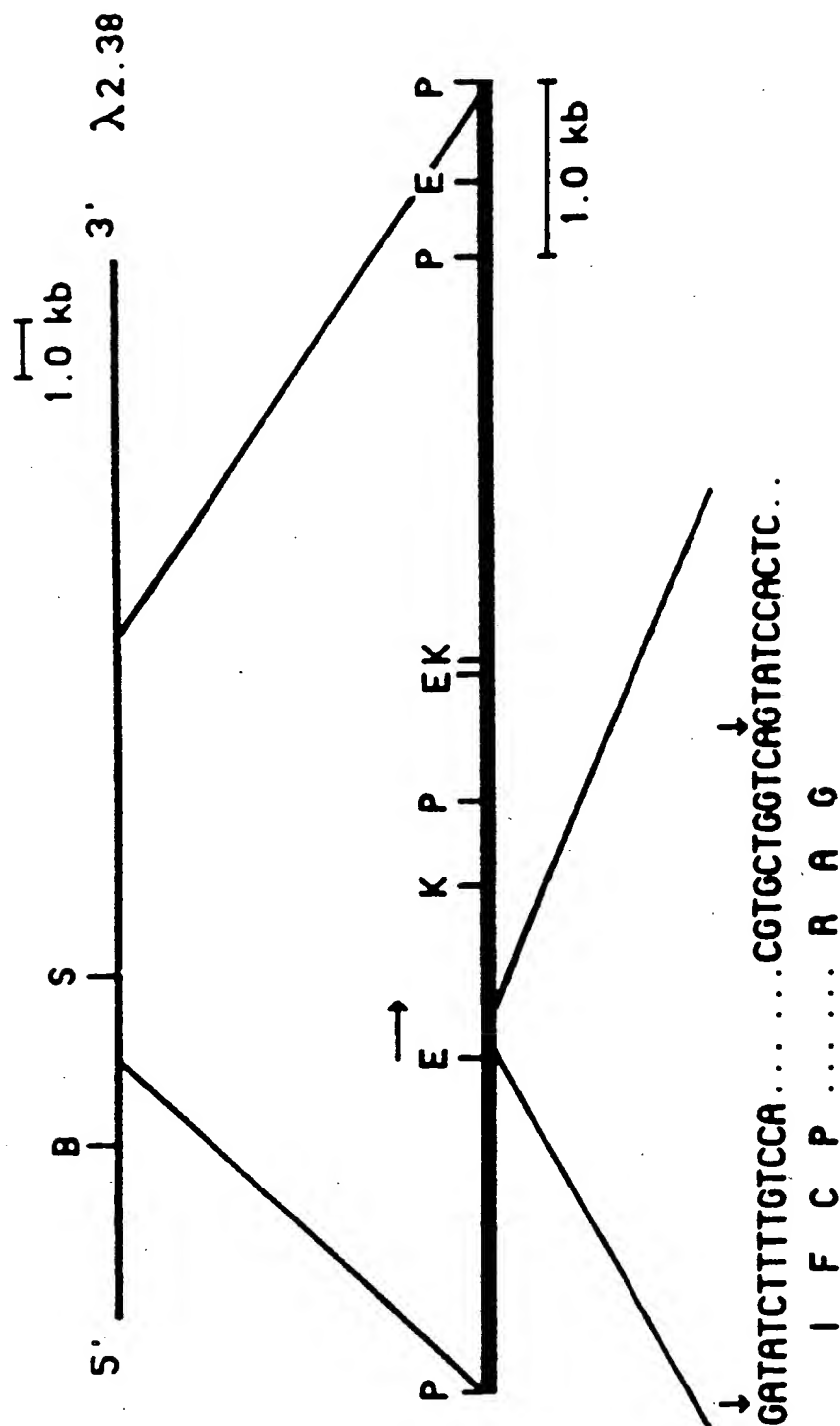


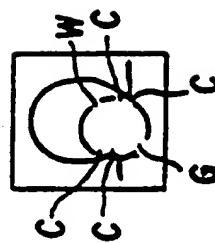
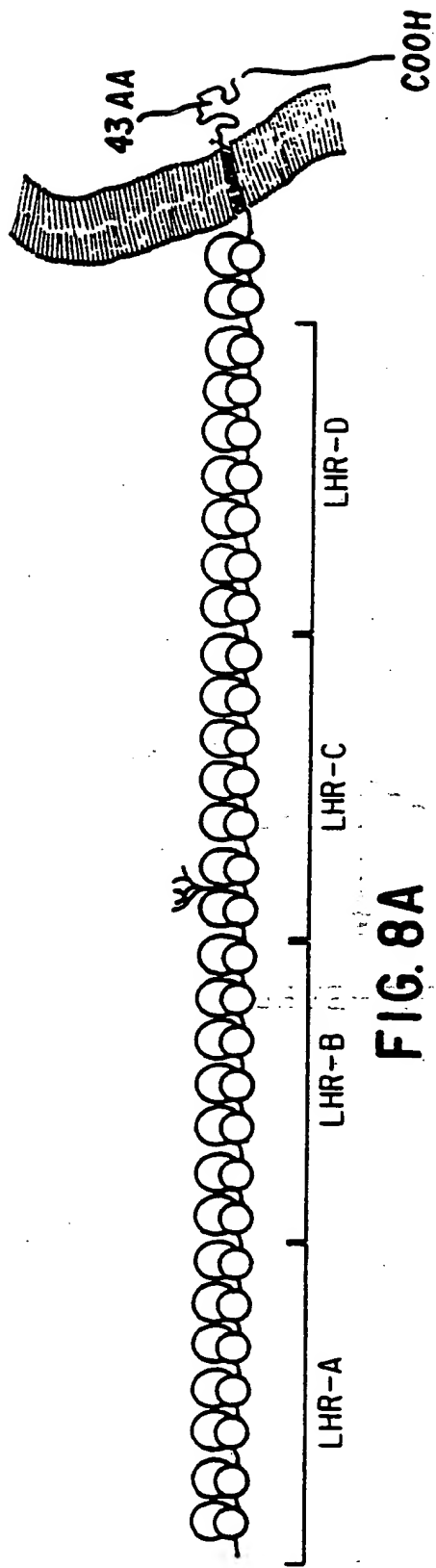
FIG. 6B

27/60

FIG. 7

U-C-PP-U-NG-I-S-N-F-G-U-F-C-PGF-KG-S-C-N	CR1	23*
U-C-P-I-NGTUR Y-K-Y-DTIFSC-PGVL-G-D-I-CT-	B2GP1	4
K-C-P-L-HG--N-S-F-G-U-F-C-GF-G-CT-	H	8*
-PP-I	CR2	4*
A-C-P-G-I-G--RS-V-D-U-F-C-GVTLRGS Q-RTCQ-	Ba	3
K-C-P-L-NG-I-K-F-G-U-F-C-GV-L-GS-E-L-C-	X111b	10
-C-P- -G-T- -F-G-U-V-C	C2b	1*
I-C-P-L-G-T-V- -I-V-C-GV-G-C-	C1r	2
-C-P-EI-NG-S- -F-GG-U-F-C-GF-U-G-I-ITC-N-Q-SLSC	C4bp	8
-C-P-I-G-S	Hap	1
-C-PP-I-A T- -F-G-U-V-C-GFA-G-S-C-I-G-I-UT-PQ-C-	IL2R	2

28/60





30/60

## FIG. 10

AA #

LHR

	1 MCLGRMGASSPRSPFVGPPAPGLPFOCGGSLIAVWVLLALPVAWG	Signal
47	QONAPFWLFPARPINLITDEFEPPIGTYNVEQRFYSGRPFSIIQKNSWWTGAKDRRR	A
497	H Q DHFL KLKTQ NASD S K E Y T D L SSP V K	B
947	H Q DHFL KLKTQ NASD S K E Y T D L SSP V K	C
1400	H KT QF S IPIND V S F KM S E L SSVE N	D
107	KSCRNPPDPVNGMVHVIKGIQFGSQIKYSCTKGYRLIGSSSATCIISGOTVIWDNETPIQR	A
557	KT TD V R N T H H E L NAAH STKP Q	B
1007	KT TD V R N T H H E L NAAH STKP Q	C
1460	GP E F INTDT TVN NE F P T LV NN T KKA EI	D
169	IPOGLPPTITINGDFISTNRENHFYGSVVTYRQNPFGSGGRKVFELVGEPSIYCTSNDDQVGIWSGPAPOCI	A
619	A	B
1069	A L R	C
1522	S EP S Y N TS N T Q HT FD EQL R K V S P R	D
239	IPNKCTPPNVENGILVSDNRSLSLNEVVEFRQOPGFVMKGPFRVKQOALNKWEPELPSCSR	A
689		B
1139		C
1592	ST AE A R PG F T IIR V SHT Q TNGR G K H	D
301	VQOPFPDVLHAERTORDKNFSPQEVFYSCFPGYDLRGAASMRCTPQGDWSPAAPTCEV	A
751		B
1201	EI G H PSHQ LH E R A	C
1654	EI G H LSHQ S LH E R T	D
361	KSCDDFMGQQLNGRVLPVNLQLGAKVDFVQDEGFLKGSASVYCVLAGMESLWNSVVPVCEQ	A
811		B
1261	L PH L S R V H V R N H	C
1714	L PH L L S R R H KA	D
424	IFCPSPPVLPNGRHTGKPLEVFPFGKAVNYTCDFHPORGTSDFLIGESTIRCTSDPQNGVWSSPAPROGI	A
874		B
1324	N A L T SGDI Y EIS MT N H EL C	C
1777	N A L T FGDI Y EIS A T MT N S EL D	D

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

31 / 60

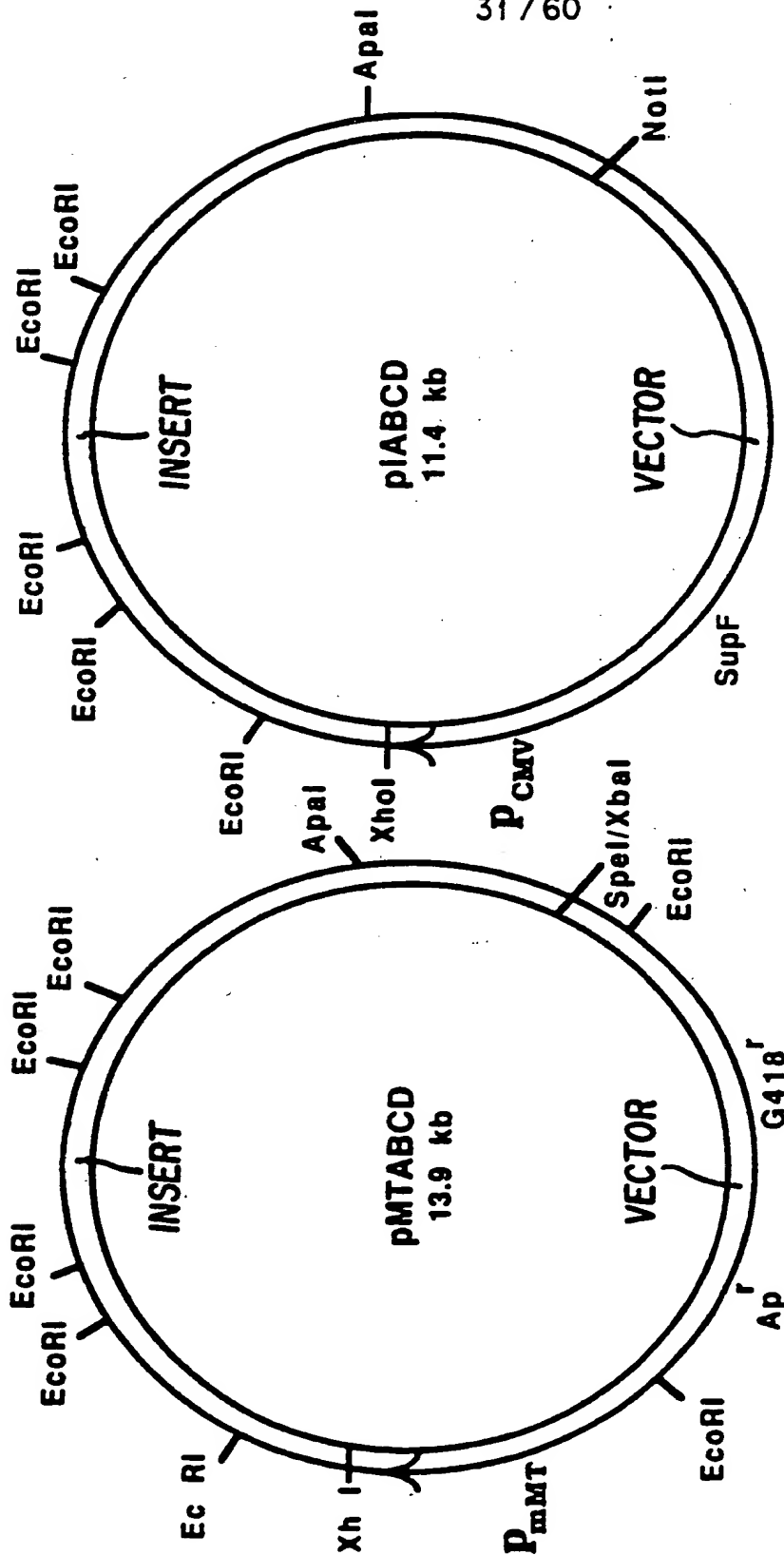


FIG. 11B

FIG. 11A

32/60

FIG. 12b



FIG. 12d



FIG. 12a

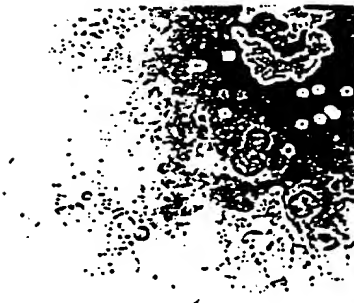


FIG. 12c

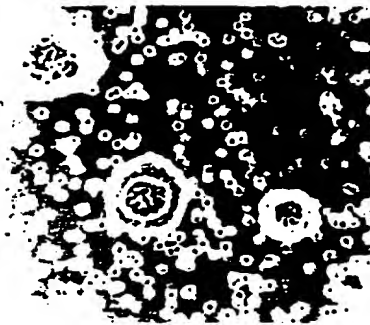
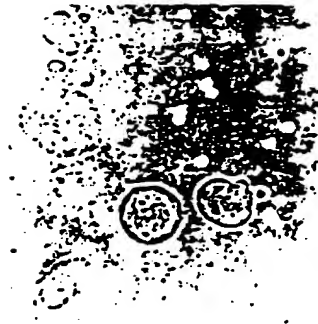


33/60

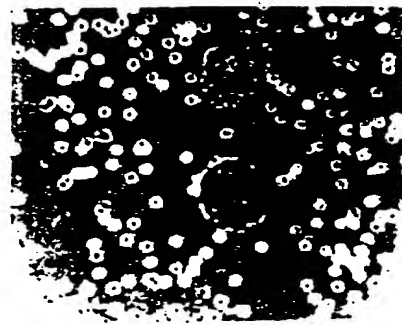
**FIG. 13a**



**FIG. 13b**



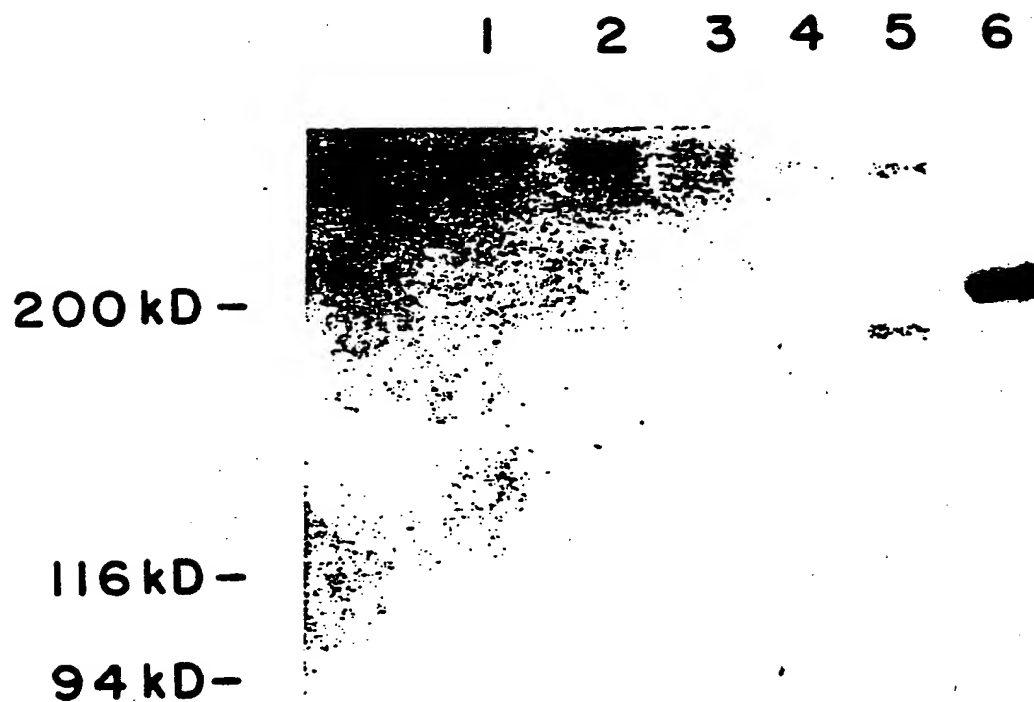
**FIG. 13c**



**FIG. 13d**

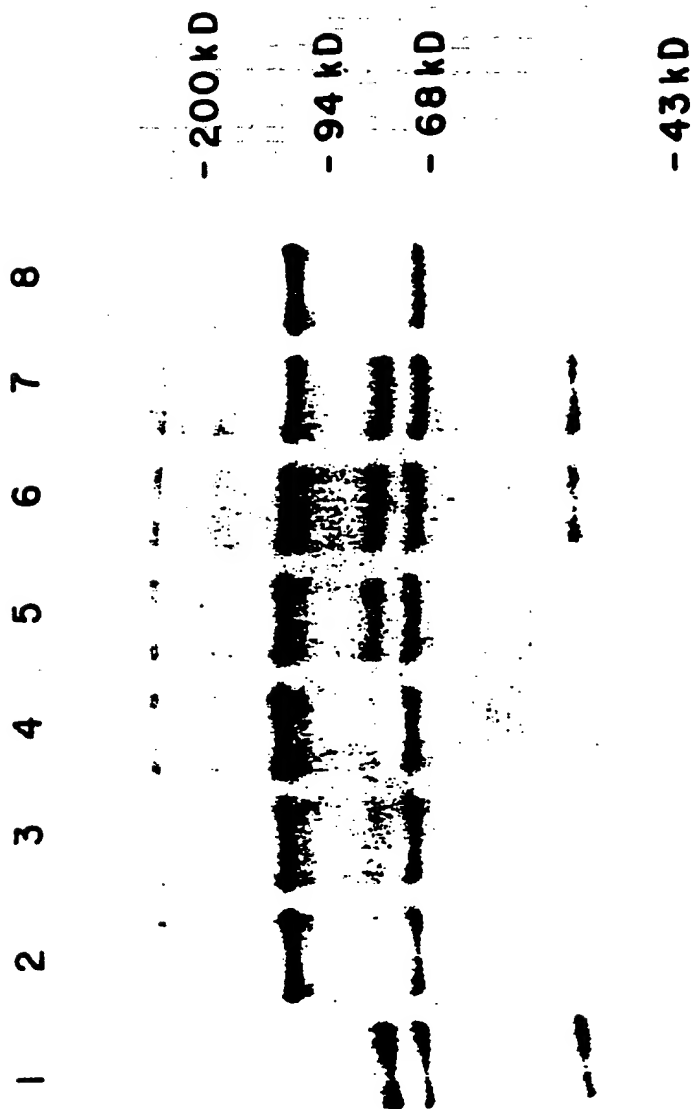


34/60

**FIG. 14****SUBSTITUTE SHEET**

35/60

FIG. 15



36/60

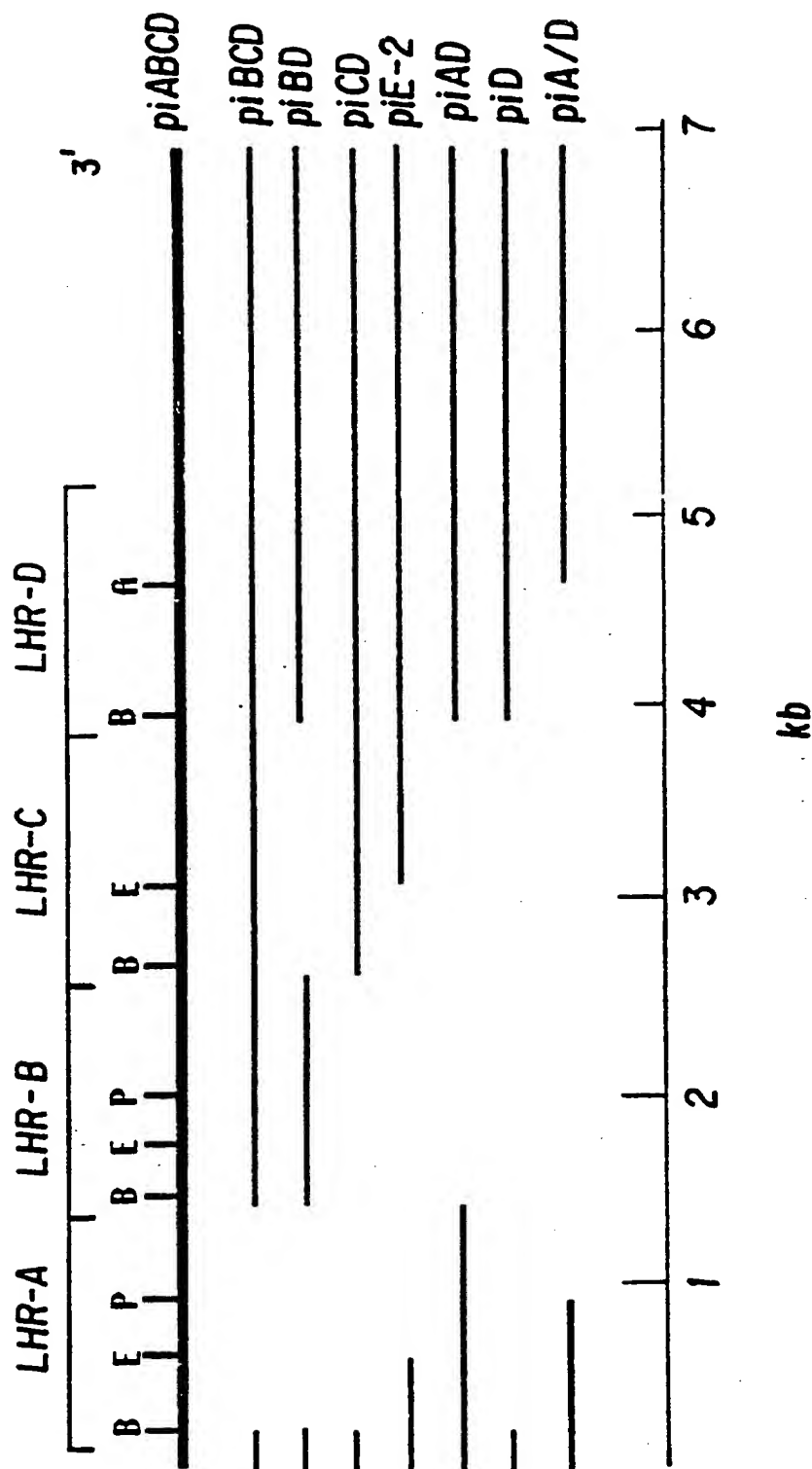
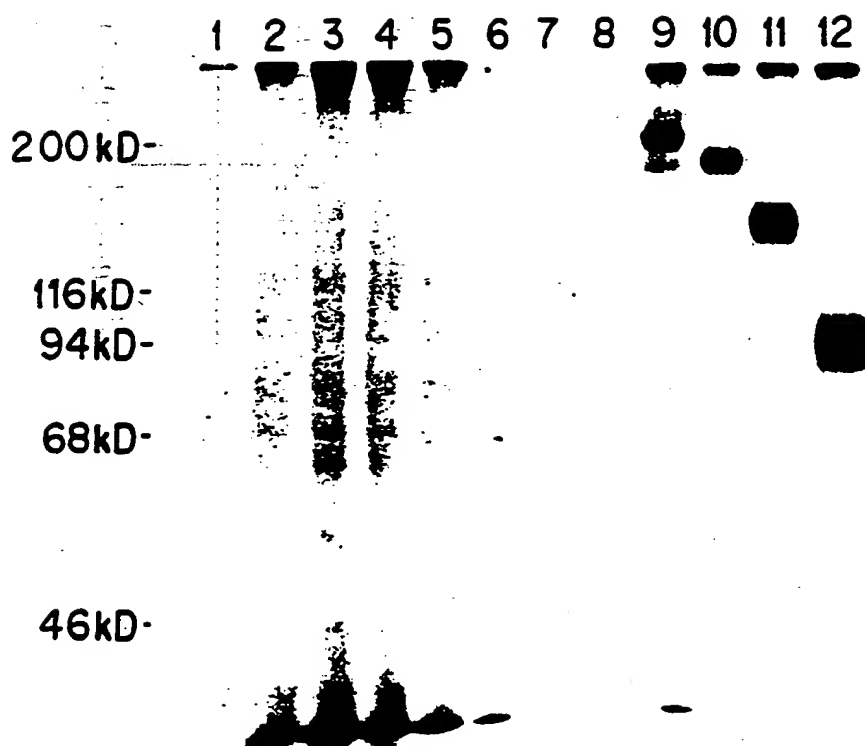


FIG. 16

37/60

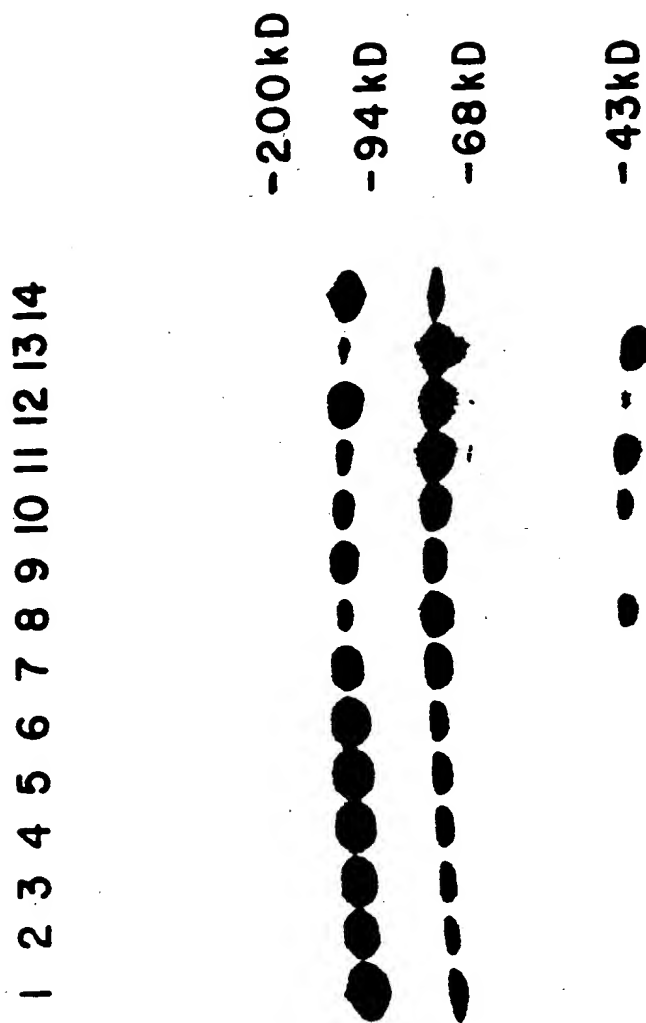
FIG. 17

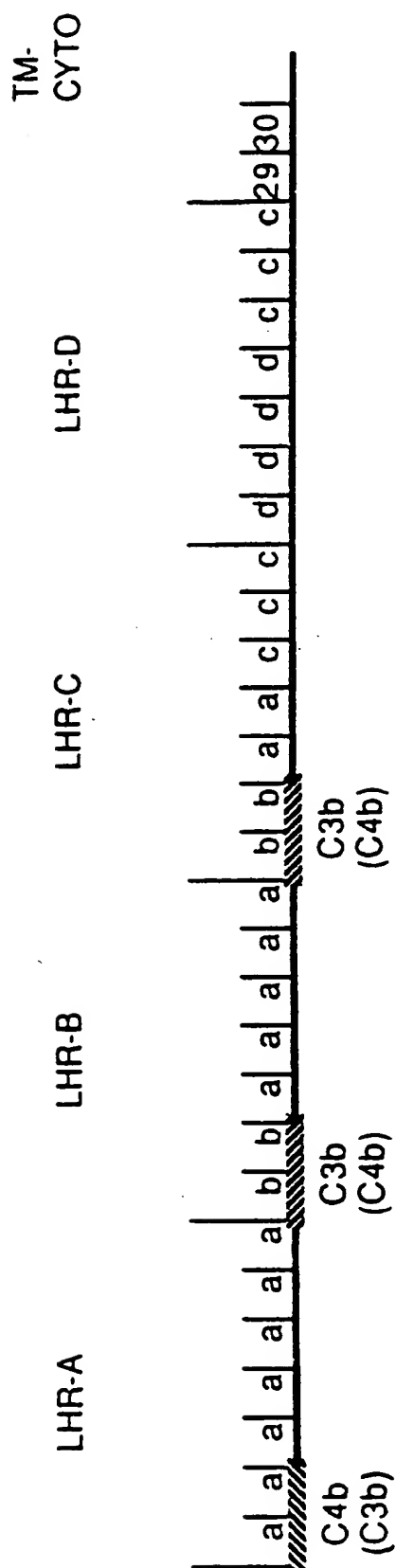


SUBSTITUTE SHEET

38/60

FIG.18





**FIG. 19**

40/60

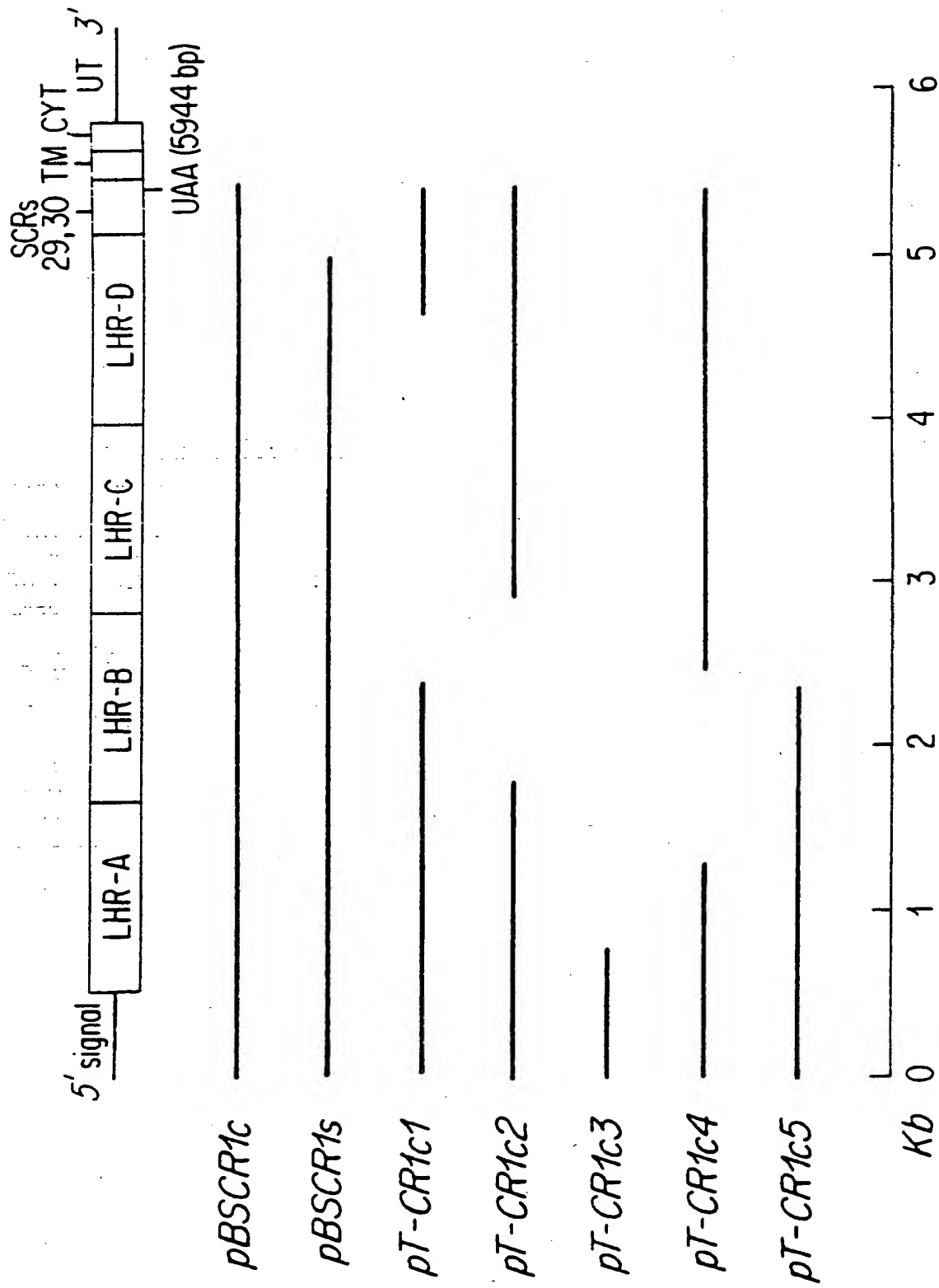
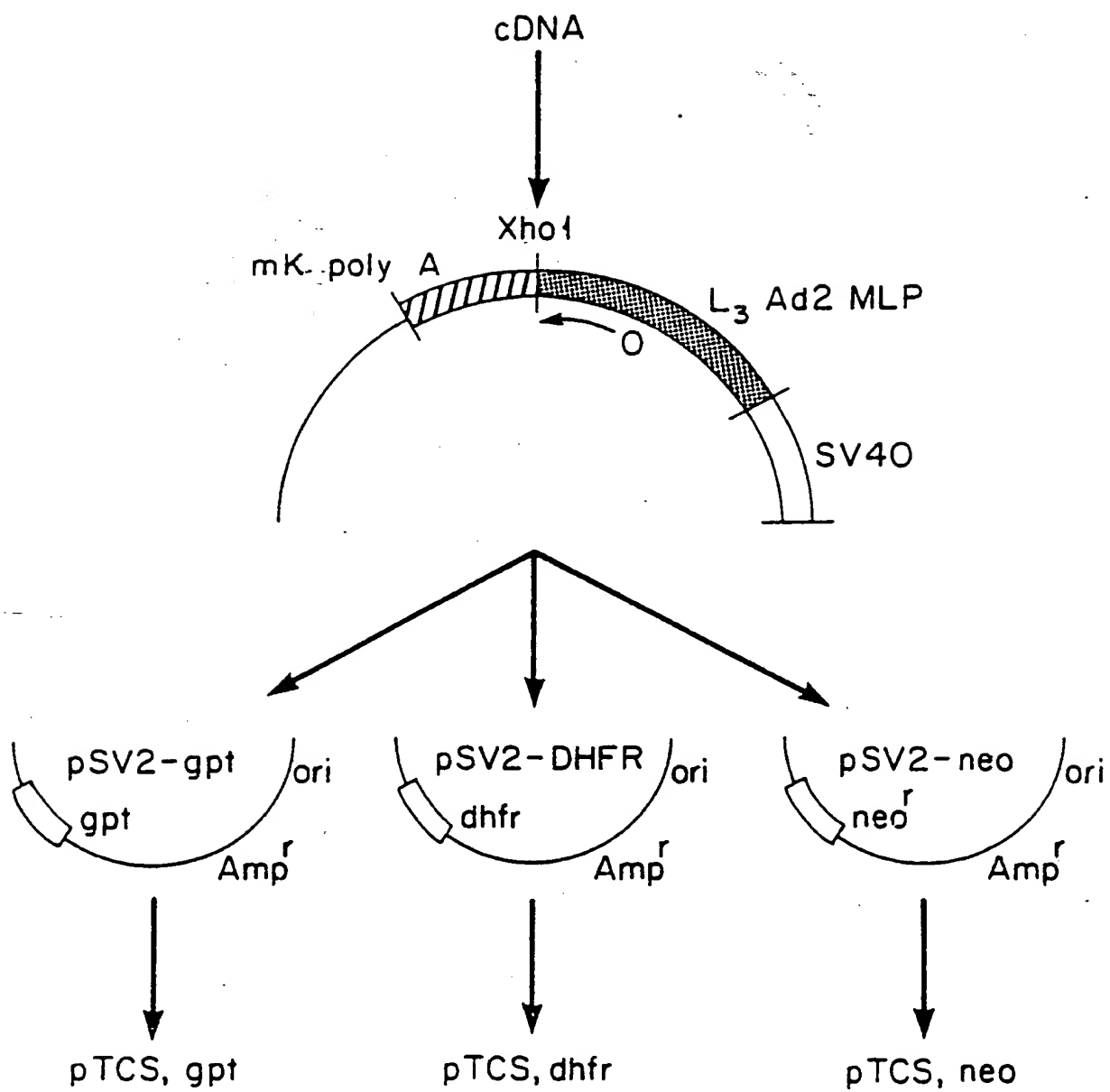


FIG. 20

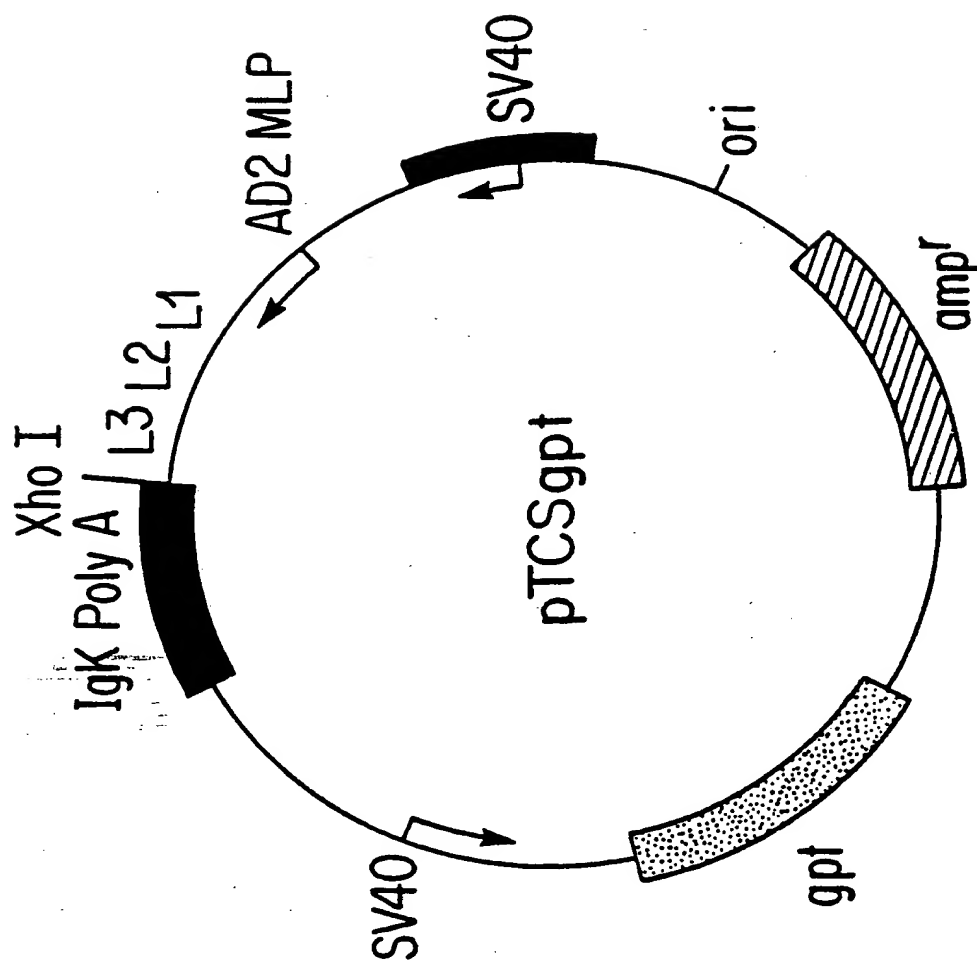
41/60

**FIG. 21**

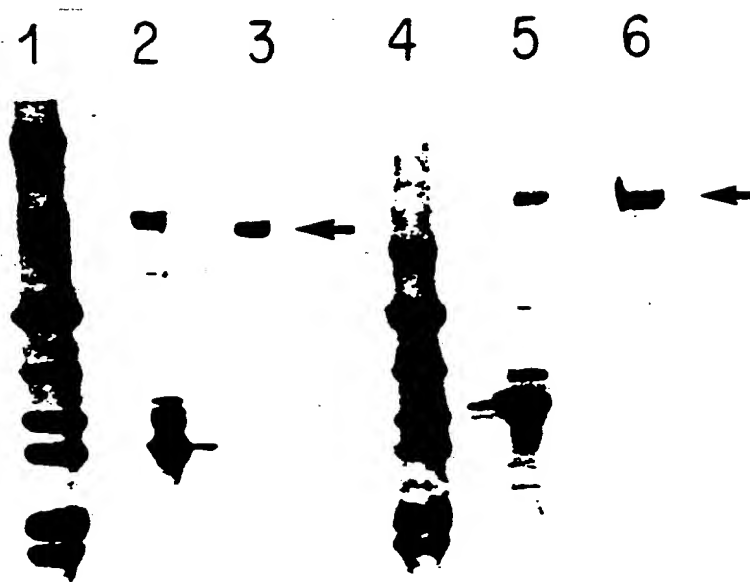


42/60

FIG. 22



43/60

**FIG. 23****SUBSTITUTE SHEET**

44/60

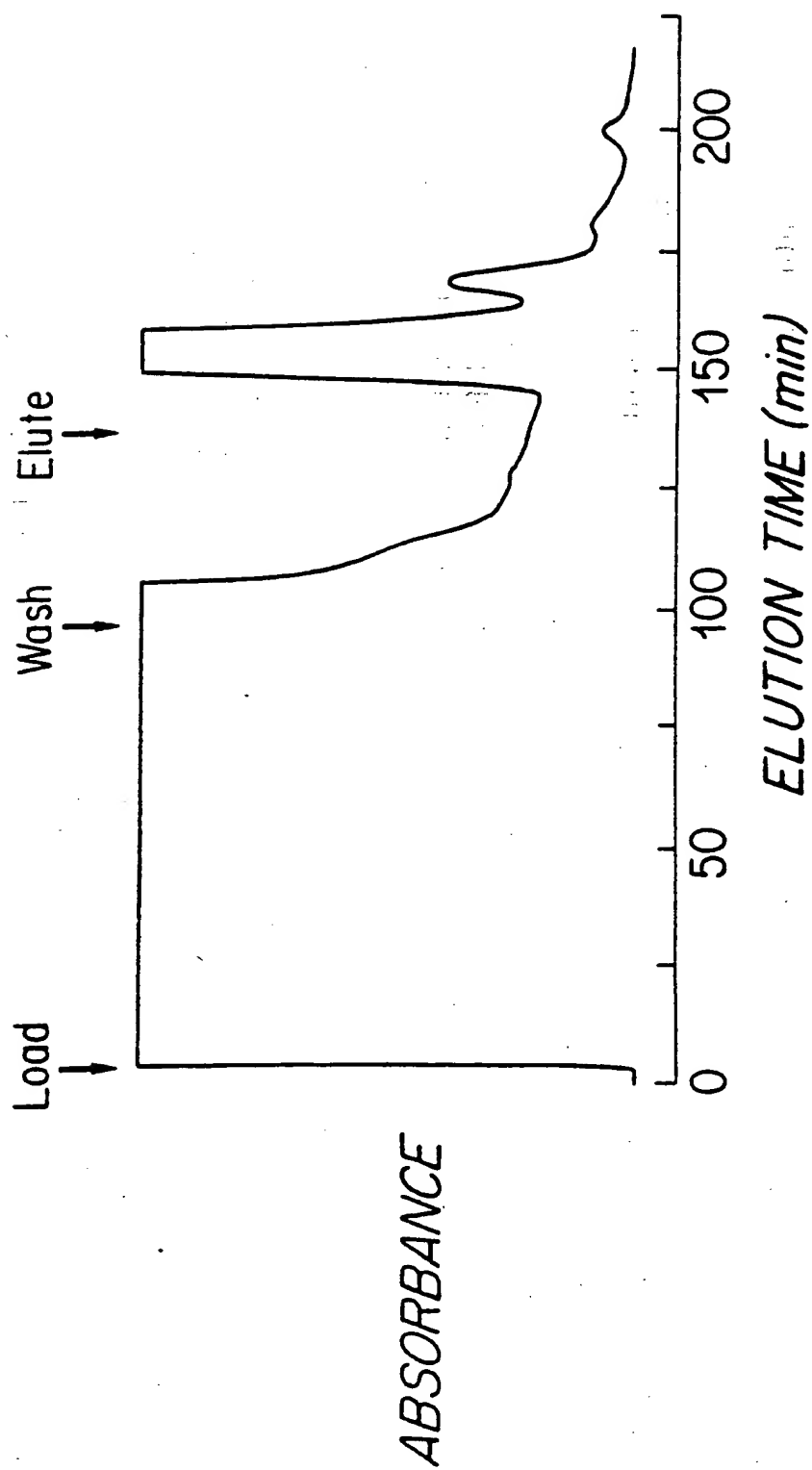


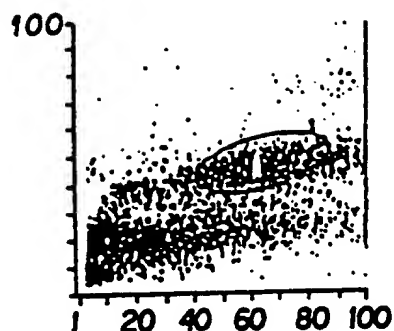
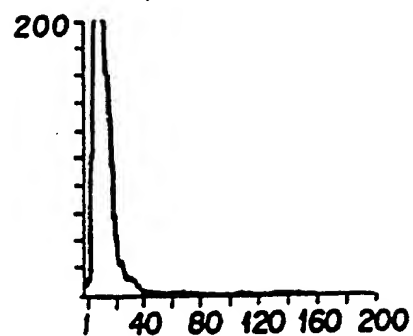
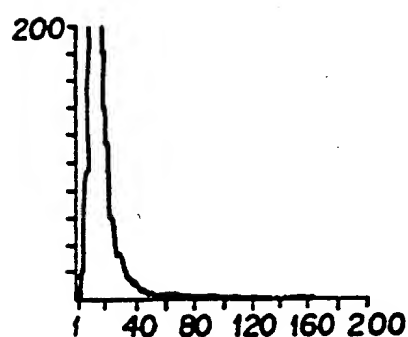
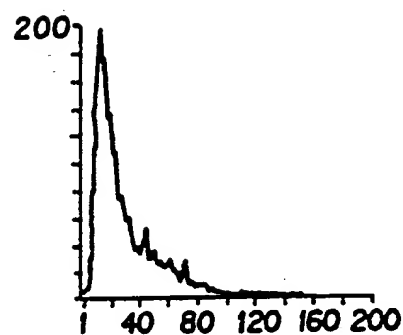
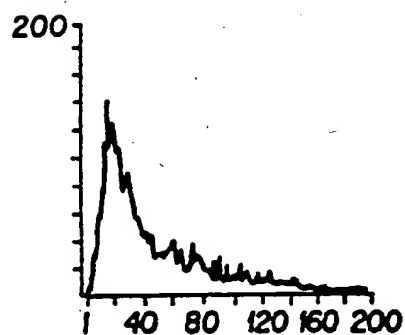
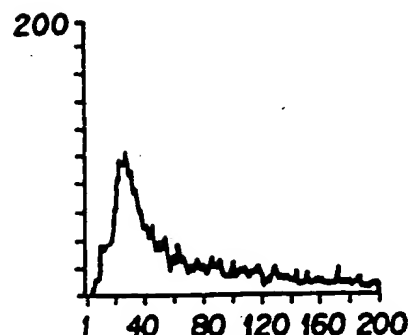
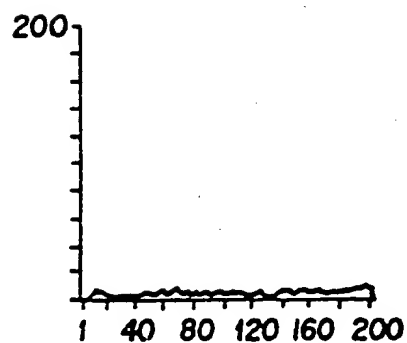
FIG. 24

45/60

**FIG. 25**



46/60

**FIG. 26a****FIG. 26b****FIG. 26c****FIG. 26d****FIG. 26e****FIG. 26f****FIG. 26g**

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

47/60

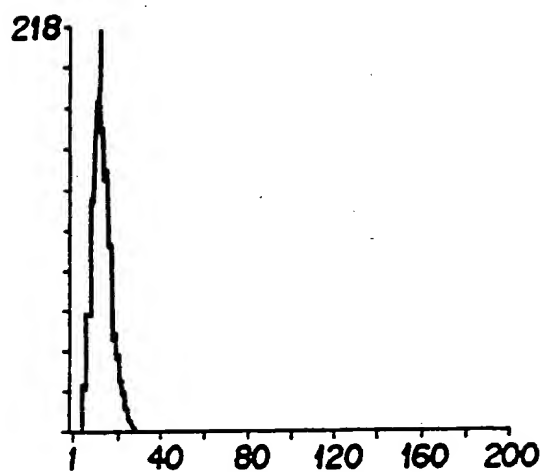


FIG. 27a

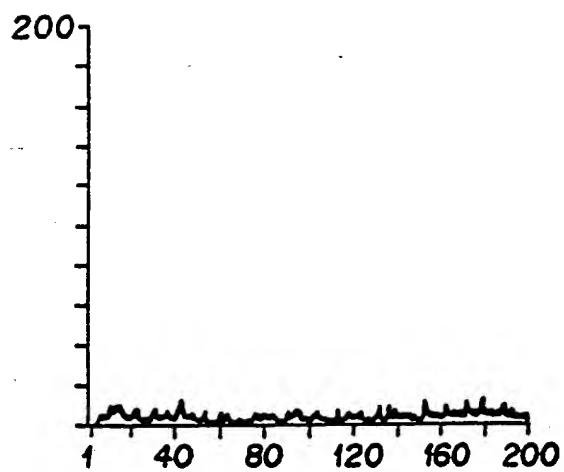


FIG. 27b

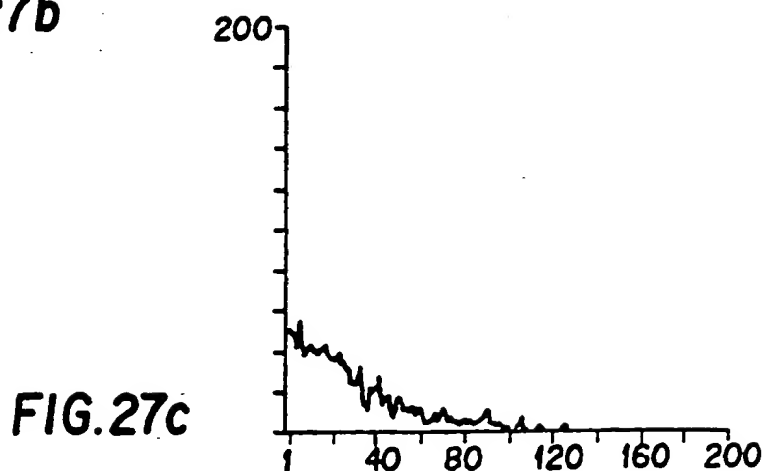
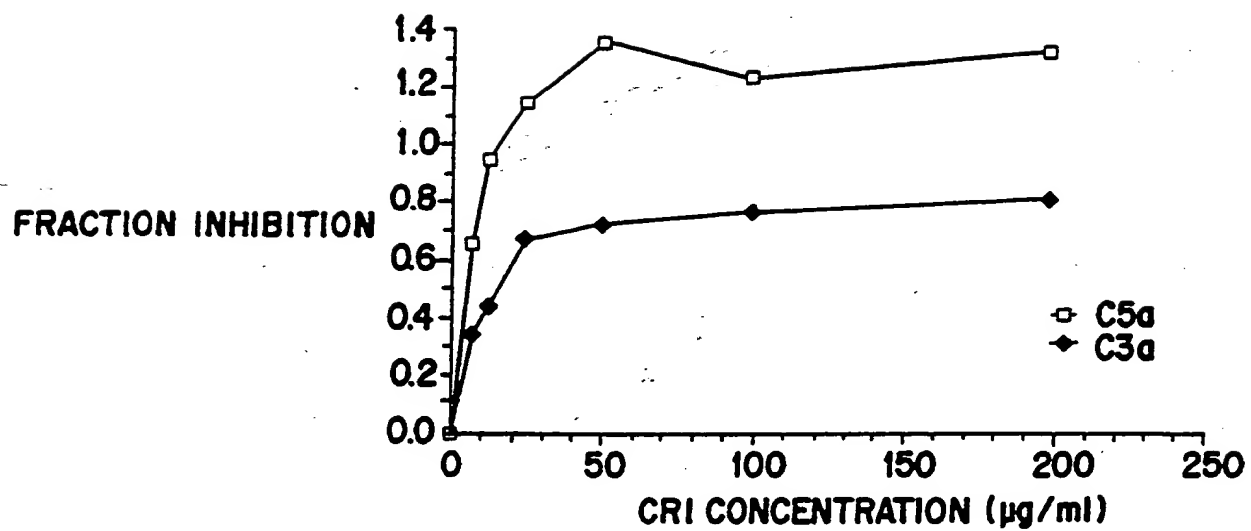


FIG. 27c

SUBSTITUTE SHEET

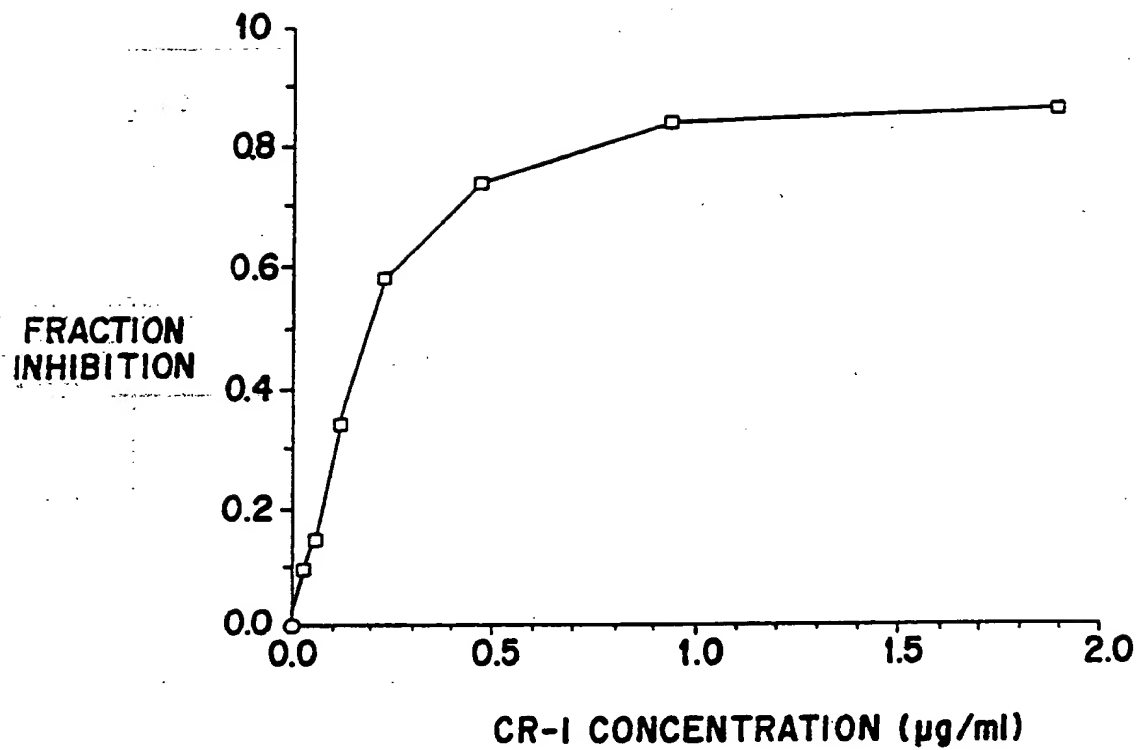
48/60

FIG. 28



49/60

FIG. 29





50/60

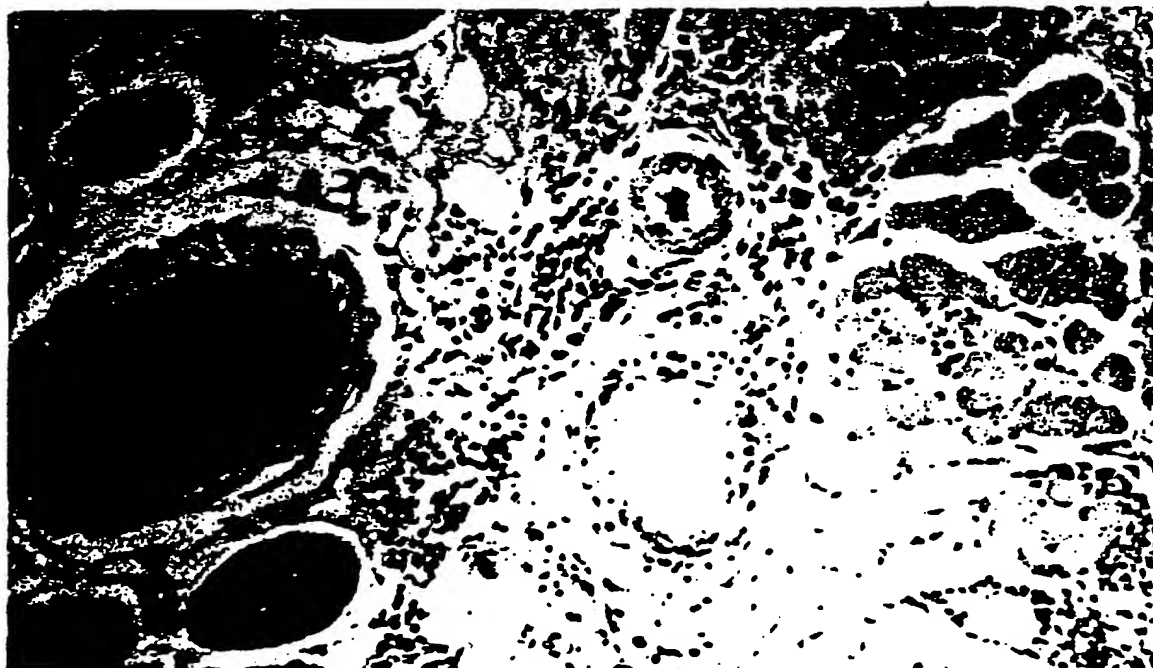
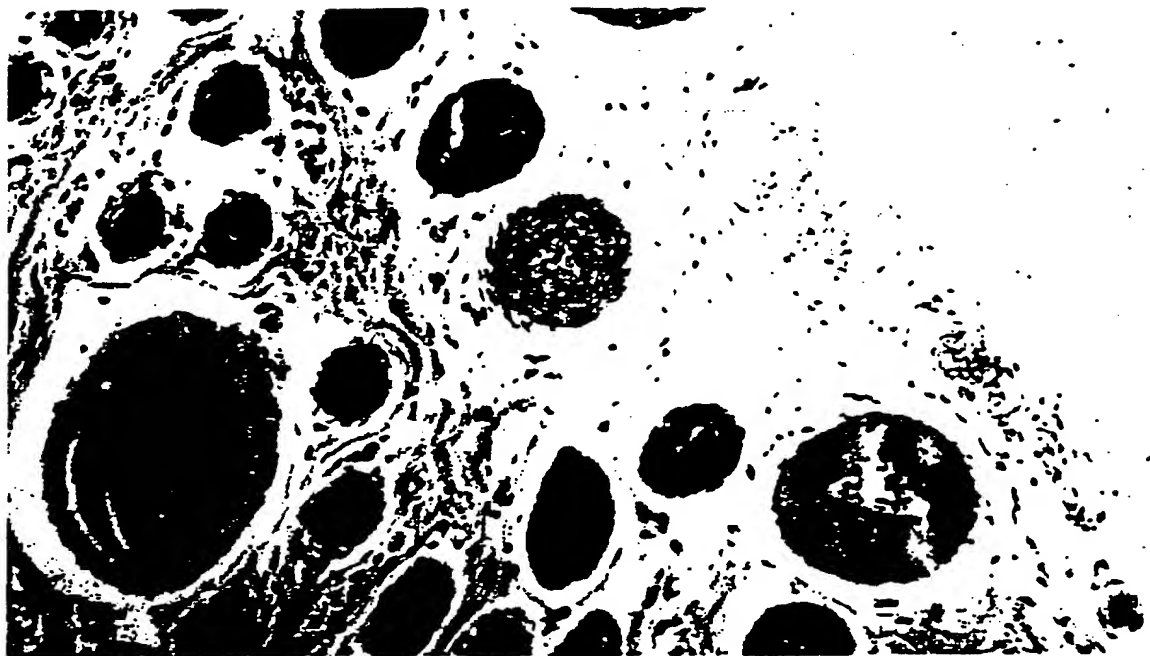
**FIG. 30**



**SUBSTITUTE SHEET**

51/60

**FIG. 31A**



**FIG. 31B**

**SUBSTITUTE SHEET**

52/60

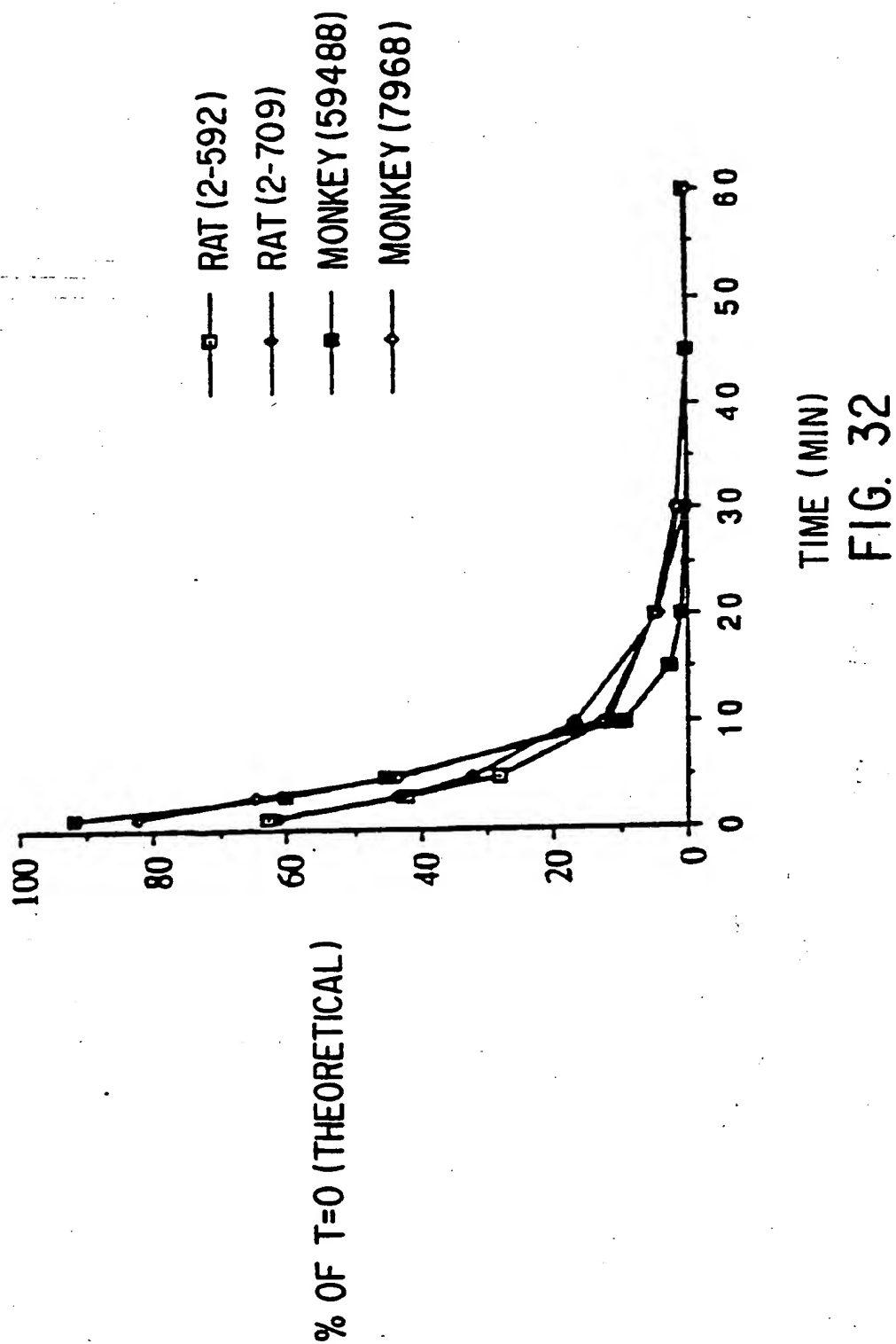


FIG. 32

53/60

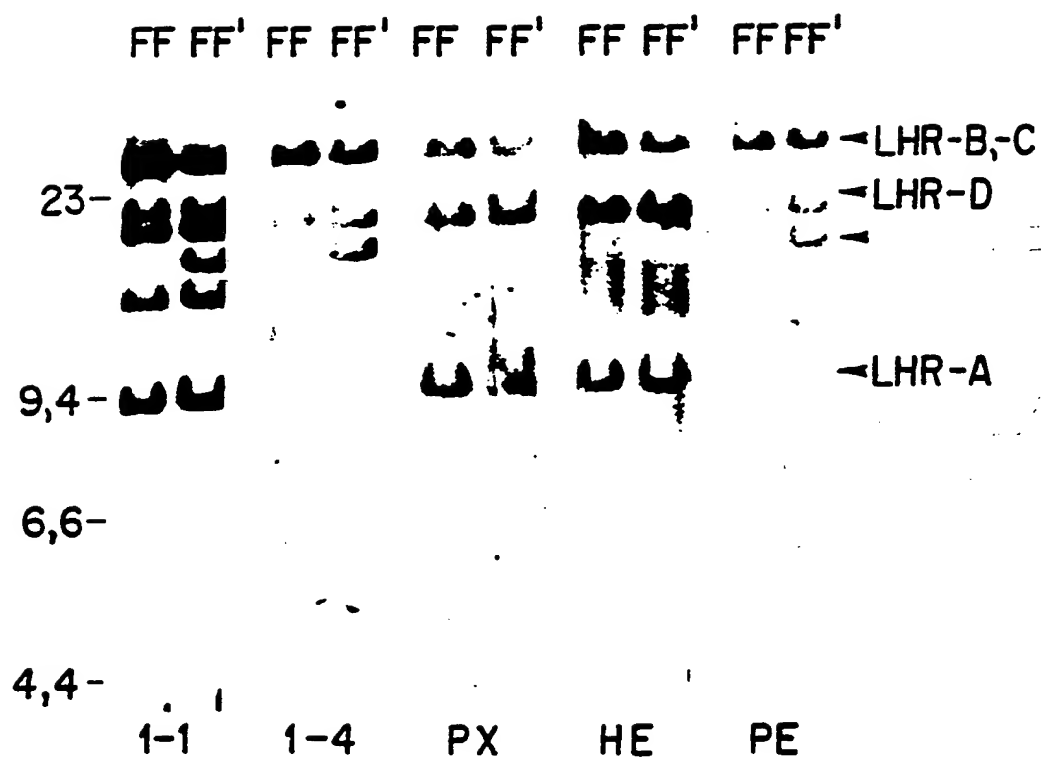


FIG. 33



55/60

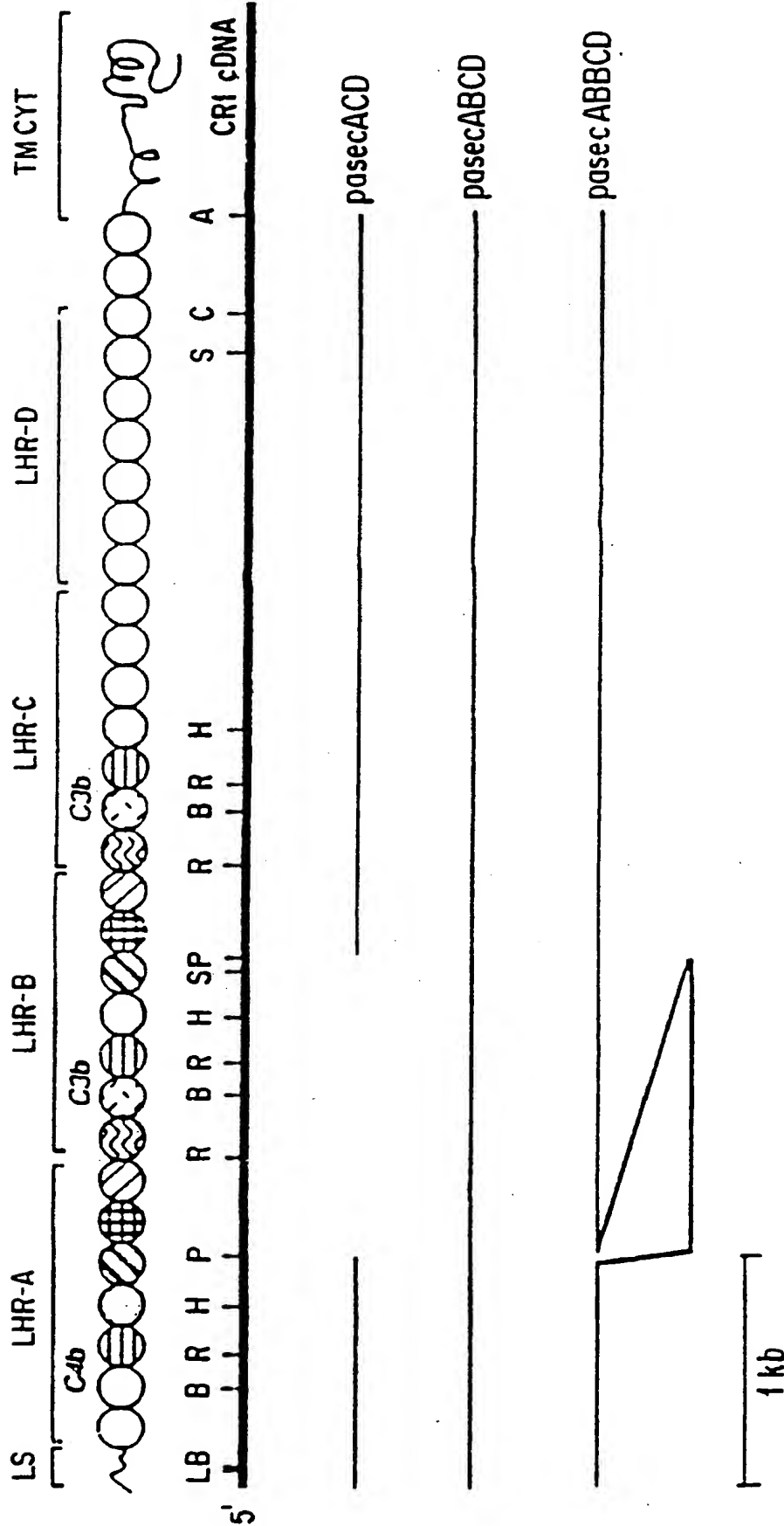


FIG. 35

56/60

FIG. 36

1 2 3

-200

-97  
-68

-43

57/60

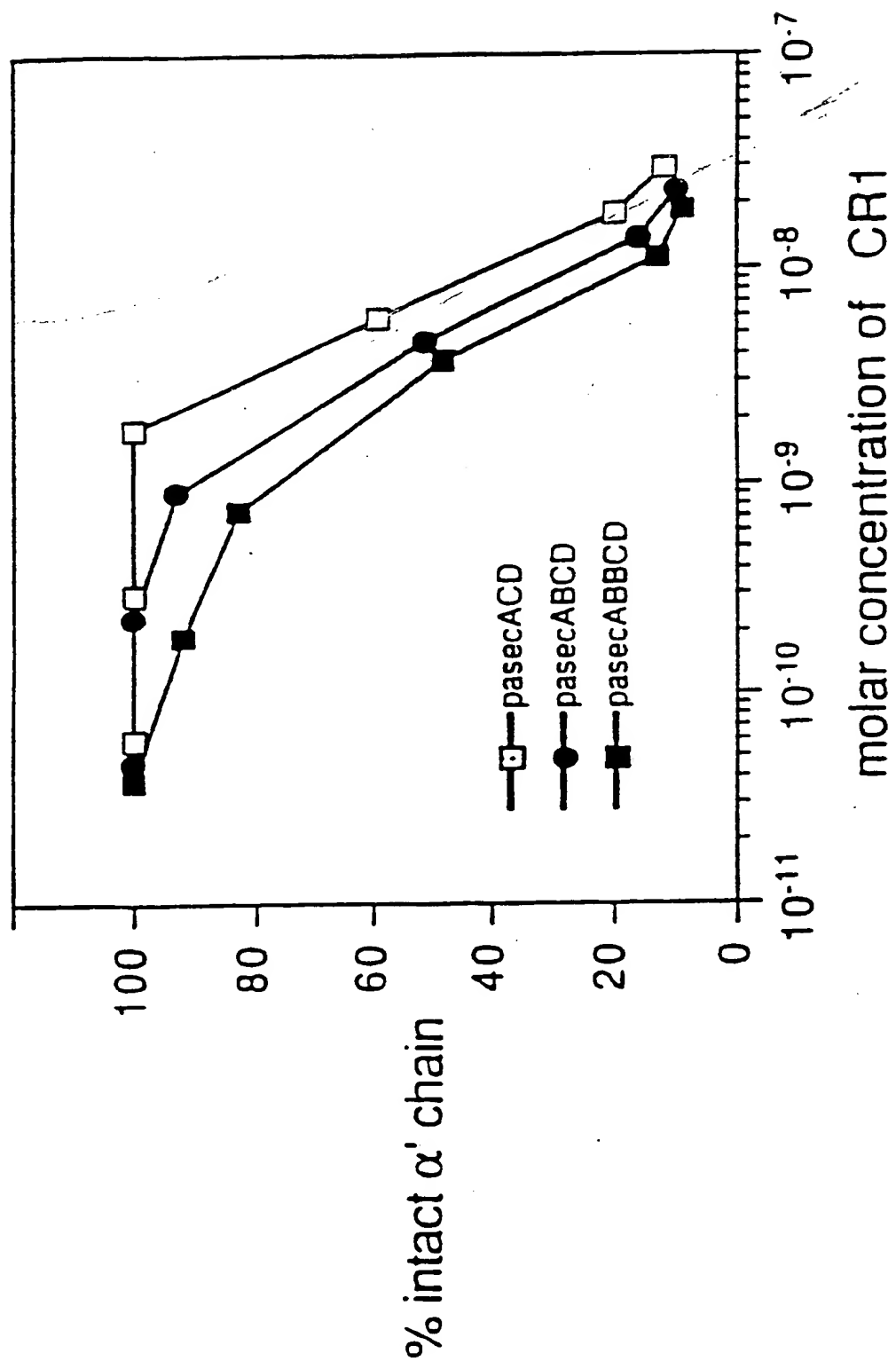


FIG. 37



58/60

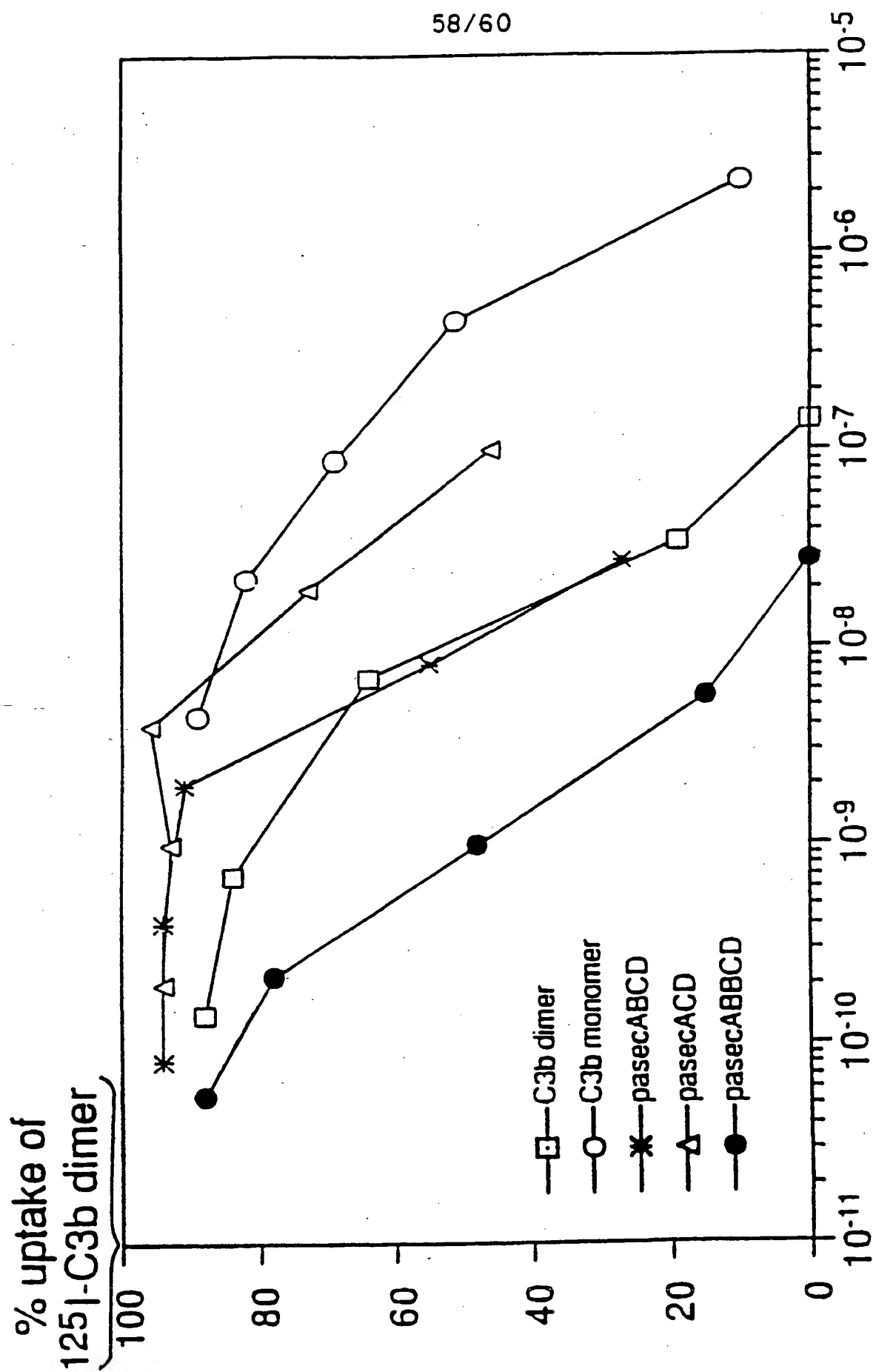
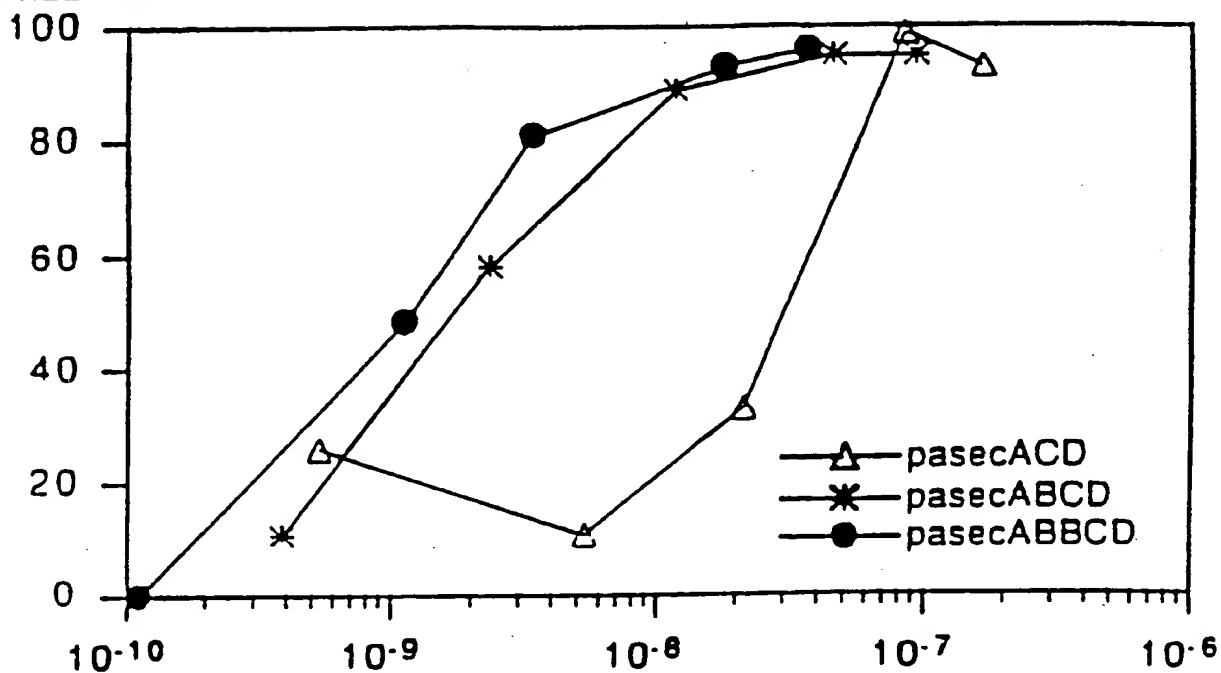


FIG. 38

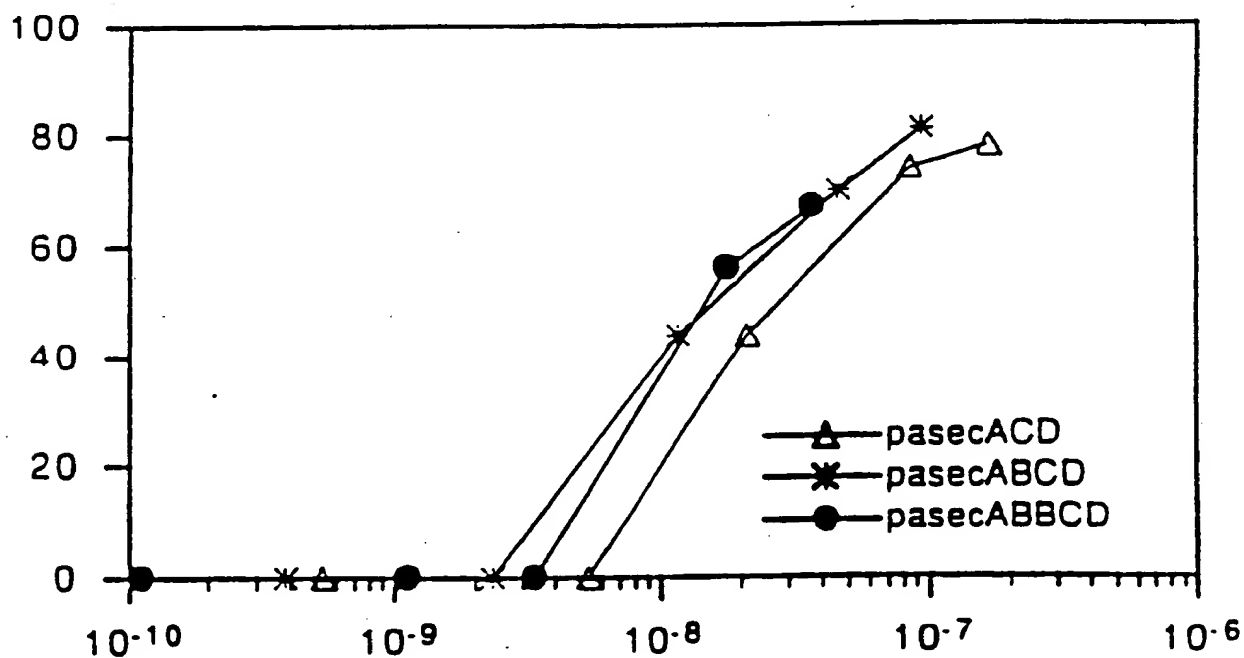
% INHIBITION OF  
C3 $\alpha$  RELEASE

59/60



molar concentration of rCR1

FIG. 39A

% INHIBITION OF  
C3 $\alpha$  RELEASE

molar concentration of rCR1

FIG. 39B

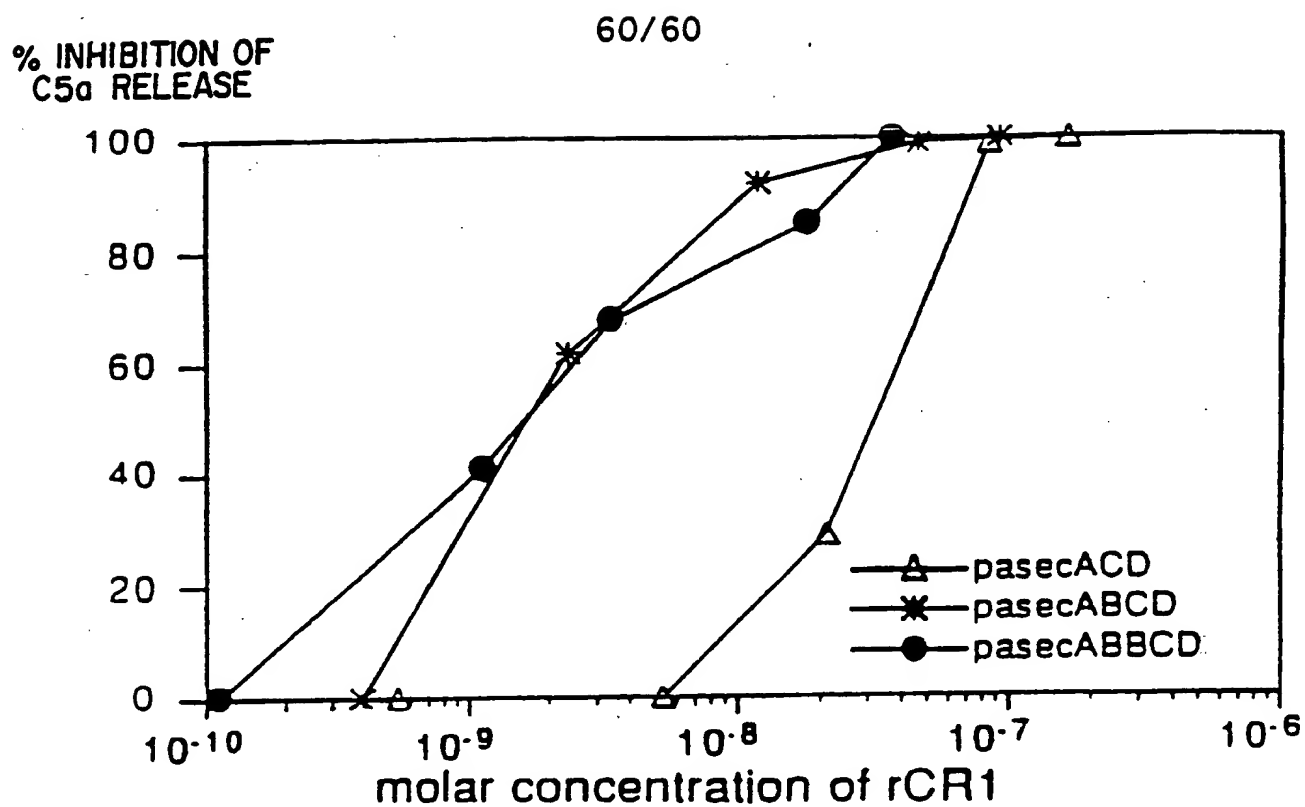


FIG. 40A

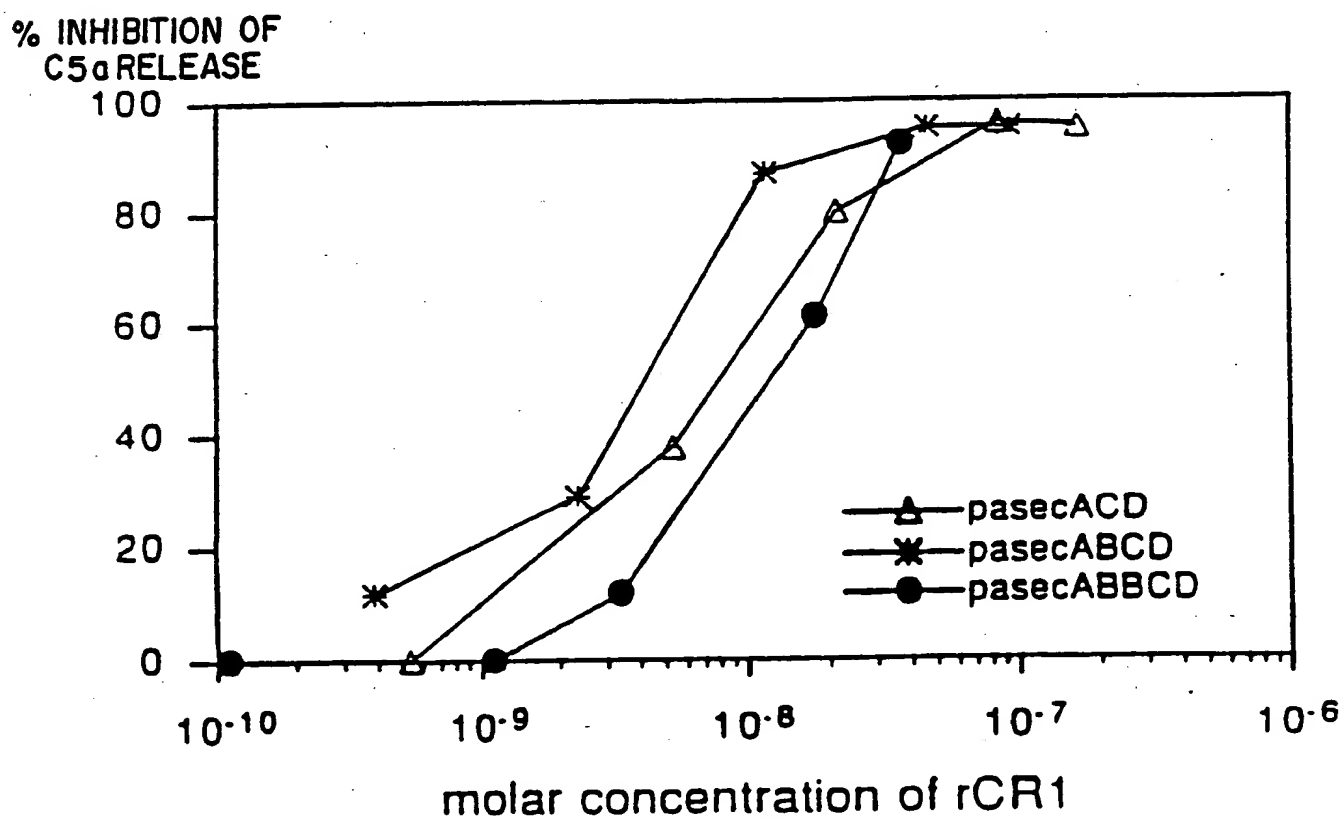


FIG. 40B

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No PCT/US90/05454

<b>I. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER</b> (if several classification symbols apply, indicate all) <sup>1</sup>		
According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both National Classification and IPC		
IPC(5): C12N 15/12		
U.S. CL.: 530/350		
<b>II. FIELDS SEARCHED</b>		
Minimum Documentation Searched <sup>4</sup>		
Classification System	Classification Symbols	
U.S.	530/350; 435/69.1	
Documentation Searched other than Minimum Documentation to the Extent that such Documents are Included in the Fields Searched <sup>5</sup>		
<b>III. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT</b> <sup>14</sup>		
Category *	Citation of Document, <sup>16</sup> with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages <sup>17</sup>	Relevant to Claim No. <sup>18</sup>
Y	Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences, Vol. 80, issued March 1983, Dykman et al., "Polymorphism of human erythrocyte C3b/C4b receptor", pages 1698-1702, see entire Document.	1-19 69 & 70
Y	Science, vol. 238, issued 18 December 1987, Smith et al., "Blocking of HIV-1 Infectivity by a soluble, Secreted Form of the CD4 Antigen", pages 1704 to 1707, see Entire Document.	20-22, 26,28-40 51-60
Y	Science, Vol. 222, issued 18 November 1983, Young et al, "Yeast RNA Polymerase II Genes: Isolation with Antibody Probes" pages 778-782, see Entire Document.	1-19
X Y	Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences, Vol. 82, issued November 1985, Wong et al., "Identification of a partial cDNA clone for the human receptor for complement fragments C3b/C4b", pages 7711-7715, see entire document.	1-40 63-68 74-85
<p>* Special categories of cited documents: <sup>15</sup></p> <p>"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance</p> <p>"E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date</p> <p>"L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)</p> <p>"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means</p> <p>"P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed</p> <p>"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention</p> <p>"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step</p> <p>"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.</p> <p>"&amp;" document member of the same patent family</p>		
<b>IV. CERTIFICATION</b>		
Date of the Actual Completion of the International Search :		Date of Mailing of this International Search Report :
09 January 1991		04 FEB 1991
International Searching Authority :		Signature of Authorized Officer to
ISA/US		John D. Ulm

## FURTHER INFORMATION CONTINUED FROM THE SECOND SHEET

V. ☐ OBSERVATIONS WHERE CERTAIN CLAIMS WERE FOUND UNSEARCHABLE<sup>1</sup>

This international search report has not been established in respect of certain claims under Article 17(2) (a) for the following reasons:

1. ☐ Claim numbers \_\_\_\_\_, because they relate to subject matter not required to be searched by this Authority, namely:
  
2. ☐ Claim numbers \_\_\_\_\_, because they relate to parts of the international application that do not comply with the prescribed requirements to such an extent that no meaningful international search can be carried out<sup>1</sup>, specifically:
  
3. ☐ Claim numbers \_\_\_\_\_, because they are dependent claims not drafted in accordance with the second and third sentences of PCT Rule 6.4(a).

VI. ☒ OBSERVATIONS WHERE UNITY OF INVENTION IS LACKING<sup>2</sup>

This International Searching Authority found multiple inventions in this international application as follows:

- I. Claims 1-40, 63-68, 74-85 drawn to nucleic acid sequences and uses thereof.
- II. Claims 41-62, 86-129 drawn to CR1 protein, fragments, compositions and use thereof.
- III. Claims 69-73 drawn to methods of purification of CR1 protein.

1. ☐ As all required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this international search report covers all searchable claims of the international application.
2. ☐ As only some of the required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this international search report covers only those claims of the international application for which fees were paid, specifically claims:
3. ☐ No required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant. Consequently, this international search report is restricted to the invention first mentioned in the claims; it is covered by claim numbers:
4. ☒ As all searchable claims could be searched without effort justifying an additional fee, the International Searching Authority did not invite payment of any additional fee.

## Remark on Protest

- ☐ The additional search fees were accompanied by applicant's protest.
- ☐ No protest accompanied the payment of additional search fees.

III. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT (CONTINUED FROM THE SECOND SHEET)		
Category *	Citation of Document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to Claim No 10
Y	Journal of Experimental Medicine, Vol. 168, issued November 1988, Klickstein et al., "Identification of Distinct C3b and C4b Recognition Sites in the Human C3b/C4b Receptor (Ck1,CD35) by Deletion Mutagenesis", pages 1699-1717, see Entire Document.	42-47, 63-68, 71-73, 106-109
Y	Journal of Experimental Medicine, Vol. 153, issued May 1981, Iida et al, "Complement Receptor is an Inhibitor of the Complement Cascade, pages 1138-1150, see Entire Document.	86-105, 110-117
Y	The New England Journal of Medicine, Vol. 316, issued 11 June 1987, Frank "Complement in the Pathophysiology of Human Disease" pages 1525-1530. See Entire Document.	86-105, 110-117
X Y	Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences, Vol. 76, issued November 1979, Fearon, "Regulation of the amplification C3 convertase of human complement by an inhibitory protein isolated from human erythrocyte membrane", pages 5867-5871. See entire document.	69-73 1-9
X Y	Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences, Vol. 83, issued August 1986, Weis et al., "Identification of a partial cDNA clone for the C3d/ Epstein-Barr Virus receptor of human B lymphocytes: Homology with the receptor for fragments C3b and C4b of the third and fourth components of complement", pages 5639-5643. See entire document.	1-40 63-68, 74-85

## III. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT (CONTINUED FROM THE SECOND SHEET)

Category *	Citation of Document, <sup>16</sup> with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages <sup>17</sup>	Relevant to Claim No <sup>18</sup>
Y	<p>Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences, Vol. 78, No. 11, issued November 1981, Suggs et al., "Use of synthetic oligonucleotide as hybridization probes: isolation of cloned cDNA sequences for human B<sub>2</sub>-microglobulins", pages 6613-6617. See entire document.</p>	<p>1-40 63-68 74-85</p>
A,P	<p>Science, Vol. 249, issued 13 July 1990, Weisman et al., "Soluble Human Complement Receptor Type 1: In Vivo Inhibitor of Complement Suppressing Post-Ischemic Myocardial Inflammation and Necrosis", pages 146-151.</p>	<p>1-117</p>

